

THE  
RU D I M E N T S .  
OF THE  
**Latin Tongue;**  
OR  
*A plain and easy Introduction*  
*Samuel Johnson's Latin Reader*  
*December the 8<sup>th</sup> 1744.*  
**Latin Grammar;**

Wherein

The PRINCIPLES of the LANGUAGE  
are Methodically digested both in  
ENGLISH and LATIN:

WITH

Useful NOTES and Observations, explaining  
the TERMS of GRAMMAR, and further  
improving its RULES.

By THO. RUDDIMAN, M.A.

The Eighth Edition corrected.

EDINBURGH,

Printed and sold by the AUTHOR, and the Book-  
sellers there. M. DCC. XXXIX.

EdueT 20917.39.8

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY  
GIFT OF  
GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON  
JANUARY 26, 1924



*Paul* T H E *Wen*  
**P R E F A C E.**

**A**MONG the several Instructors of Youth in this Nation, many have for a long Time complained, that the two *Rudiments* of the *Latin* Tongue commonly taught in our Schools, are many ways insufficient, in respect to the End proposed by them; That ~~the~~ one is written wholly in *Latin*, the very Language it is designed to teach; That the other is defective, particularly in the *Syntax*; And that the Rules of both are often obscure and intricate, and sometimes false and erroneous. Whereupon some knowing Masters of that Profession, by their repeated Sollicitations, prevailed with me to undertake the Compiling of a new *Rudiments*,

which they conceived might in a great Measure be freed from the Faults and Defects of the former, and so contrived as to bring down its *Rules* to the Level of a Boy's Capacity, and make them enter with more Ease and Familiarity into his Mind. This is the End I had in View: With what Success it has been prosecuted, is a Province for others, not me, to determine. However, if any thing inclines me to hope its Acceptance in the World, it is owing to the kind Assistance I have had from time to time of the above mentioned and other Gentlemen, as the Duty of their respective Employments would permit them. What discouraged me most in this Undertaking, was the different Opinions of *Grammarians*, with the sharp Contests and Disputes they have had about the Method of *Instruction*, and the most proper Way to communicate the *Latin Tongue* to others with the greatest Facility and Expedition. It would be almost an endless Task to reckon up the various *Scheme* that have been projected for that Purpose. Therefore I shall engage no farther in the Subject, than as it seems necessary to give my Reader a clear and distinct View of the Reasons that determined me to the Method I have followed.

I have

I have long observed, that those of our  
Country, whose Business it is to direct the  
Studies of Youth, are greatly divided about  
what an *Introduction to Latin Grammar*  
ought properly to contain, and in what Lan-  
guage its Precepts should be conveyed. Some  
are for contracting it into as narrow Limits  
as is possible, and not to burthen the Me-  
mory of the Learner with any Thing but  
what is essential and absolutely necessary:  
While others contend, that this is too gene-  
ral, and not sufficient to direct his Practice,  
without the Addition of more particular  
Rules. Again, tho' the greater Part incline  
to have the first *Principles of Grammar*  
communicated in a known Language, there  
are not a few, and of these some Persons of  
Distinction, who are still for retaining them  
in *Latin*, which, tho' attended at first with  
more Difficulty, makes (in their Judgment)  
a more lasting Impression on the Mind, and  
carries the Learner more directly to the Ha-  
bit of speaking *Latin*, a Practice much used  
in our Schools. It appeared next to an Im-  
possibility to satisfy so many different Opin-  
ions: However, the Method I have taken  
seems to bid fairest for it. For I have re-  
duced the *Substance* of these *Rudiments* in-  
to a sort of *Text*, and have given the *Latin*  
an

an English Version, leaving the Master to his own Choice and Discretion which to use. And that none may complain that the *Text* is too compendious, I have subjoined large *Notes*, which I humbly conceive will supply that Defect.

To render my Design of more general Use, I was obliged to fall in with this Expedient, which has produced one Inconvenience, namely, that the Book is thereby swelled to a much greater Bulk than I could have wished, or some perhaps will excuse; tho' the Reasons are so obvious that it is needless to relate them. I confess I have been larger in the *Notes* than the Nature of a *Rudiments* seemed to require: But, as I presume there is nothing in them but what may be useful either to Master or Scholar, and since it was never my Intention that they should be all taught, or any of them with the same Care as the *Essential Parts*, I thought they might the more easily be dispensed with. There is one Thing more which has considerably increased them, viz.. the *Remarks* I have added on *English Nouns, Pronouns and Verbs*; which I judged useful on a double Account: First, As they serve to illustrate *Latin Grammar*, the first Notions and Impressions whereof we receive

receive from the Language we our selves speak. *Secondly*, Because the greater Number of those who are taught the *Latin Tongue*, reap little other Benefit from it, than as it enables them to speak and write *English* with the greater Exactness, I supposed it would not be amiss to throw in something in order to that End.

Having thus given a general *Plan* of my Undertaking, all I shall say of the particular Management of it, is, that I have laboured all along to render every Thing as plain and easy as I possibly could, considering with a tender Regard for whose Benefit it is designed. I have consulted the best *Grammarians* both Ancient and Modern, and have borrowed from them whatever I conceived fit for my Purpose; tho' not contenting my self with their bare Authority, I frequently had Recourse to the Fountain itself, I mean the purest Writers of the *Latin Tongue*. As thus I have been solicitous to avoid *Error*, so I have been cautious not to incur the Censure of having affected *Novelty*, and therefore have receded no farther from the common *Systems*, than I think they have receded from Truth; retaining the usual *Terms of Art*, which have so long obtained in the Schools, tho' some.

sometimes I have taken the Liberty, as I saw Occasion for it, to explain them my own Way. That I might lay no more Weight on the Memories of Children than they could well bear, I have reduced the *Rules* to as small a Number as the Subject would allow of, and conceived them in as few Words as was consistent with Perspicuity; leaving it to the Industry of the Teacher to explain them more fully, as he shall find necessary; without which no *Rules* can be sufficient. The *Syntax* is indeed longer than was to be wished; but I frankly own that I do not see how it can be made much shorter, without either confounding its Order, or leaving out the *Elliptical Rules*. However, to remove the Objection as much as I could, I have subjoined a more *Compendious Syntax*, consisting only of a few *Fundamental Rules*, which may be taught alone, or before the other, as the Judgment and Discretion of the Master shall direct him.

T H E

THE  
RUDIMENTS  
OF THE  
Latin Tongue :

O R,

*A plain and easy Introduction*

T O

Latin Grammar.

PARS PRIMA.  
De Literis & Sylla-  
bis.

Magister.  
QUOT sunt Literæ a-  
pud Latinos?

Dicípulus. Quinque & vi-  
ti; a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h,  
k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s,  
v, x, y, z.

M. Quomodo dividuntur?  
D. In Vocales & Conso-  
nates.

M. Quot sunt Vocales?

Sext; a, e, i, o, u, y.

PART FIRST.  
Of Letters and Syl-  
lables.

Master.  
HOW many Letters are  
there among the La-  
tins?

Scholar. Five and twenty;  
a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j,  
k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t,  
u, v, x, y, z.

M. How are they divided?  
S. Into Vowels and Conso-  
nants.

M. How many Vowels are  
there?

S. Six; a, e, i, o, u, y.

A M. Quot

## 2 Rudiments of the Lat in Tongue, Part I

M. Quot sunt Consonantes?

D. Novemdecim; b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.

M. Quot sunt Diphthonagi?

D. Quinque; ae, [vel ε] oe, [vel α] au, eu, ei; ut, ae-tas, vel aetas, poena, vel pena, audio, euge, hei.

M. How many Consonants are there?

S. Nineteen; b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.

M. How many Diphthongs are there?

S. Five; ae, [or ε] oe, [ε] au, eu, ei; as, aetas, aetas, poena, or poena, audi-euge, hei.

### N O T E S.

GRAMMAR is the Art of speaking any Language rightly, as  
Greek, Latin, English, &c.

Latin Grammar is The Art of speaking rightly the Latin Tongue.

The RUDIMENTS of that Grammar Are plain and easy Instructions teaching Beginneres the first Principles, or the most common and necess Rules of Latin.

The Rudiments may be reduced to these four Heads. I. Treating of Letters. II. Of Syllables. III. Of Words. IV. Of Sentences.

These are naturally made up one of another; for one or more Letters in a Syllable, one or more Syllables make a Word, and two or more Words make a Sentence.

A Letter is A Mark or Character representing an uncomposed Sound.

X, F, Z, are only to be found in Words originally Greek, and H by so it is not accounted a Letter, but a Breathing.

We reckon the J called Jod [or Je] and the V called Van, two Letters distinct from I and U, because not only their Figures, but their Power Sounds are quite different; J sounding like G before E, and V almost like A Vowel is A Letter that makes a full and perfect Sound by itself.

A Consonant is A Letter that cannot sound without a Vowel.

A Syllable is any one complete Sound.

There can be no Syllable without a Vowel: And any of the five Vowels alone, or any Vowel with one or more Consonants before or after it, make a Syllable.

There are for the most Part as many Syllables in a Word as there Vowels in it. Only there are two kinds of Syllables in which it is otherwise. 1. When U with any other Vowel comes after G, Q or S, as in Lin Qui, Snakes; where the Sound of the U vanishes, or is little heard. 2. When two Vowels join to make a Diphthong, or double Vowel.

A Diphthong is A Sound compounded of the Sounds of two Vowels, both of them are heard.

Of Diphthongs there are Proper, viz. au, en, ei, in which both Vowels are heard; and two Improper, viz. a, w, in which the a and o are not heard but they are pronounced as a simple.

Some, not without Reason, to these five Diphthongs add other three ei in Mais, ui in Trula, yi or ii in Harpyia or Harpia.

## Part II. of Words.

3

### PARS SECUNDA.

#### De Dictionibus.

M. **Q** Uot sunt partes Orationis?

D. **O**cto; *Nomen, Pronomen, Verbum, Particium; Adverbium, Praepositio, Interjectio, Conjunctio.*

M. Quomodo dividuntur?

D. In Declinabiles & Indeclinabiles.

M. Quot sunt Declinabiles?

D. Quatuor; *Nomen, Pronomen, Verbum, Particium.*

M. Quot sunt Indeclinabiles?

D. Item quatuor; *Adverbium, Praepositio, Interjectio, Conjunctio.*

### PART SECOND.

#### Of Words.

M. **H**ow many Parts of Speech are there?

S. Eight; Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle; Adverb, Preposition, Interjection, Conjunction.

M. How are they divided?

S. Into Declinable and Indeclinable.

M. How many are Declinable?

S. Four; Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle.

M. How many are Indeclinable?

S. Likewise Four; Adverb, Preposition, Interjection, Conjunction.

A WORD [*Vox* or *dictio*] is one or more syllables joined together, which Men have agreed upon to signify something.

Words are commonly reduced to eight Classes called Parts of Speech: But some comprise them all under three Classes, viz. *Noun, Verb* and *Adverb*. Under *Nouns* they comprehend also *Pronouns* and *Participle*; and under *Adverb*, also *Praepositio*, *Interjection* and *Conjunction*. Others to these add a fourth Class, viz. *Adnoun*, comprehending *Adjectives* under it, and restricts *Noun* to *Substantives* only. These by some are otherwise called *Names, Qualities, Affirmations and Particles*.

The Declinable Parts of Speech are so called, because there is some Change made upon them, especially in their last Syllables: And this is what we call *Declension* or *Termination of Words*. But the indeclinable Parts continue unchangeably the same.

The last Syllable, on which these Changes do fall, is called the *Ending* or *Termination of Words*.

These Changes are made by what Grammarians call *Accidentia*, i. e. The accidents of Words.

These Accidents are commonly reckoned Six, viz. *Gender, Case, Number, Mood, Tense, and Person*. Of these, *Gender* and *Case* are peculiar to three of the Declinable Parts of Speech, viz. *Noun, Pronoun* and *Participle*; and *Mood, Tense* and *Person* are peculiar to one of them, viz. *Verb*: And *Name* is common to them all.

NOTE, 1. That *Person* may also be said to belong to *Noun* or *Pronoun*; but then it is not properly an Accident, because no Change is made by it in the Word.

P.

A. 2.

NOTS,

## 4 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

NOTE 2. That *Figure, Species and Comparison*, which some call *Accidents*, do not properly come under that Name, because the Words have a different Signification from what they had before. See Chap. IX.

NOTE 3. That the Changes that happen to a Noun, Pronoun and Participle, are in a stricter Sense called *Declension* or *Declination* of them; and the Changes that happen to a Verb are called *Conjugation*.

### C A P. I.

#### De Nomine.

M. **Q**uomodo declinatur  
Nomen?

D. Per Genera, Casus &  
Numeros.

M. Quot sunt Genera?

D. Tria; Masculinum, Fa-  
mininum & Neutrum.

M. Quot sunt Casus?

D. Sex; Nominativus, Ge-  
nitivus, Dativus, Accusativus,  
Vocativus & Ablativus.

M. Quot sunt Numeri?

D. Duo; Singularis & Plu-  
ralis.

M. Quot sunt Declinatio-  
nes?

D. Quinque; Prima, Secun-  
da, Tertia, Quarta & Quinta.

#### R E G U L A E G E N E R A L E S.

1. Nomina neutri generis  
habent Nominativum, Accu-  
satивum & Vocativum simi-  
les in utroque Numero: & hi  
Casus in Plurali semper desig-  
nunt in a.

2. Vocativus in Singulati-

### C H A P. I.

#### Of Noun.

M. **H**ow is a Noun decli-  
ned?

S. By Genders, Cases, and  
Numbers.

M. How many Genders are  
there?

S. Three; Masculine, Fe-  
minine and Neuter.

M. How many Cases are  
there?

S. Six; Nominative, Ge-  
nitive, Dative, Accusative  
Vocative and Ablative.

M. How many Numbers are  
there?

S. Two; Singular and Plu-  
ral.

M. How many Declensions  
are there?

S. Five; First, Second,  
Third, Fourth and Fifth.

#### GENERAL RULES.

1. Nouns of the Neuter Gen-  
der have the Nominative, Ac-  
cusative and Vocative alike in  
both Numbers: And these Ca-  
ses in the Plural end always  
in a.

2. The Vocative for the mu-  
ltiple

## Part II. Chap. I. of Noun. 5

plerumque, in Plurali semper, est similis Nominativo.

part in the Singular, [and] always in the Plural, is like the Nominative.

3. Dativus & Ablativus  
Pluralis sunt similes.

3. The Dative and Ablative Plural are alike.

4. Nomina propria plu-  
rumque carent Plurali.

4. Proper Names for the most part want the Plural.

A NOUN is that Part of Speech which signifies the Name or Quality of Thing ; as, *Homo*, a Man ; *Bonns*, good.

A Noun is either Substantive or Adjective.

A Substantive Noun is That which signifies the Name of a Thing ; as, *rbor*, a Tree ; *Virtus*, Virtue ; *Bonitas*, Goodness.

An Adjective Noun is That which signifies an Accident, Quality, or Property of a Thing ; as, *Albus*, white ; *Felix*, happy ; *Gravis*, heavy.

A Substantive may be distinguished from an Adjective these two Ways.

A Substantive can stand in a Sentence without an Adjective, but an Adjective cannot without a Substantive ; as, I can say, *A Stone falls*, but I cannot say, *Heavy falls*. 2. If the Word *Thing* be joined with an Adjective, it will make Sense ; but if it be joined with a Substantive, it will make Non-sense : Thus we say, *A good Thing*, *A white Thing* ; but we do not say, *A man Thing*, *A Beast Thing*.

A Substantive Noun is divided into Proper and Appellative.

A Proper Substantive is That which agrees to one particular Thing of a Kind ; as, *Virgilius*, a Man's Name ; *Penelope*, a Woman's Name ; *Scotia*, Scotland ; *Edinburgum*, Edinburgh ; *Tanus*, The Tay.

An Appellative Substantive is That which is common to a whole Kind of Things ; as, *Vir*, a Man ; *Femina*, a Woman ; *Regnum*, a Kingdom ; *bs*, a City ; *Fluvius*, a River.

Note, That when a proper Name is applied to many, it becomes an Appellative ; as, *Duodecim Cæsares*, the twelve Caesars.

GENDER in a natural Sense is the Distinction of Sex, or the Difference between Male and Female : But in a Grammatical Sense we commonly understand by it The Fitness that a Substantive Noun hath to be joined to an adjective of such a Termination, and not of another. Therefore,

Of Names of Animals, the *Heis* are of the Masculine, and the *Sbeis* of the Feminine Gender : But of Things without Life, and where the Diversity of Sex is not considered, even of things that have Life, some are of the Masculine, others of the Feminine, and others of the Neuter Gender, according to Use of the best Authors of the Latin Tongue.

besides these three principal Genders, there are reckoned also other three Principal, which are nothing else but Compounds of the three former.

The Gender Common to two, the Gender Common to three, and the best Gender.

The Common Gender, or Gender common to two, [*Genus communis*, or *geme dñm*] is Masculine and Feminine ; and belongs to such Nouns as relate to both Sexes : As, *Parens*, a Father or Mother ; *Bos*, an Ox or Cow.

The Gender common to three, [*Genus commune trium*] is Masculine, Feminine and Neuter ; and belongs only to Adjectives. Whereof some have Terminations, the first Masculine, the second Feminine, and the third Neuter.

## Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

ter; as, *Bonns, Nona, bonum*, good. Some have two, the first Masculine and Feminine, and the second Neuter; as, *Mollis, molle*, soft. And some have but one Termination, which agrees indifferently to any of the three Genders; as, *Prudens*, wife.

III. The Doubtful Gender [*Genus dubium*] belongs to such Nouns as are found in good Authors sometimes in one Gender, and sometimes in another; as, *Dies*, a Day, Masc. or Fem. *Vulgaris* the Rabbler, Masc. or Neut.

[We have excepted out of the Number of Genders the Epicene or Promiscuous Gender; for properly speaking there is no such Gender distinct from the three chief ones, or the doubtful. There are indeed Epicene Nouns, that is, some Names of Animals in which the Distinction of Sex is either not at all, or very obscurely considered; and these are generally of the Gender of their Terminations; as, *Aquila*, an Eagle, Femin. because it ends in a; *Passer*, a Sparrow, Masc. because it ends in er. (See p. 8. and 11.) So *Homo*, a Man or Woman, Masc. *Mancipium*, a Slave, Neut. *Anguis*, a Serpent, Doubtful.]

To distinguish these Genders we make use of these three Words, *Hic*, *hic*, *hoc*, which are commonly, tho' improperly, called Articles. *Hic* is the Sign of the Masc. *hic* of the Fem. *hoc* of the Neut. Gender; *hic* & *hoc* of the Common to two; *hic*, *hic*, *hoc* of the Common to three; *hic* aut *hic*; *hic* aut *hoc*, &c. of the Doubtful.

By CASES we understand the different Terminations that Nouns receive in declining: So called from *cado*, to fall, because they naturally fall or flow from the Nominative, which is therefore called *Casus rectus*, the straight Case; as the other five are named *Obliqui*, crooked.

The Singular NUMBER denotes one single Thing; as, *Homo*, a Man; the Plural denotes more Things than one; as, *Homines*, Men.

---

¶ Before the Learner proceeds to the Declension of Latin Nouns, it may not perhaps be improper to give him a general View of

### The Declension of English Nouns.

I. The English Language hath the two Genders of Nature, viz. Masculine and Feminine; for Animals in it are called *HE* or *SHE*, according to the Difference of their Sex: And almost every Thing without Life is called *IT*. But because all the Adjectives of this Language are of one Termination, it has no Occasion for any other Genders.

II. The English, properly speaking, has no Cases, because there is no Ablation made in the Words themselves, as in the Latin's but instead therewer we use some little Words called PARTICLES.

Thus, The Nominative Case is the simple Noun itself: The Particle *OF* put before it, or 's after it, makes the Genitive: *TO* or *FOR* before it make the Dative: The Accusative is the same with the Nominative: The Vocative hath *O* before it: And the Ablative hath *WITH*, *FROM*, *IN*, *BY*, &c.

NOTE, 1. That when a Substantive comes before a Verb, it is called the Nominative; when it follows after a Verb Active, without a Preposition intervening, it is called the Accusative.

NOTE, 2. That the Apostrophus or Sign ['] is not used in the Genitive Plural; as *Mens Works*, the Apostles Creed.

NOTE, 3. That *TO* the Sign of the Dative, and *O* of the Vocative, are frequently omitted or understood.

Besid

## Part II. Chap. I. of NOUN.

Besides these there are other two little Words called *ARTICLES*, which are commonly put before Substantive Nouns, viz. *A* [or *An* before a Vowel] & *H* [called the *Indefinite Article*, and *THE* called the *Definite*. *A* or *An* signifies as much as the Adjective *One*, and is put for it; as, *A Man*, that is, *one Man*. *The* is a Pronoun, and signifies almost the same with *This* or *That*, and *These* or *Those*.

**NOTE.** 1. That proper Names of Men, Women, Towns, Kingdoms, and Surnames, when used in a very general Sense, have none of these Articles; *Man* is mortal, i. e. every *Man*; *God abhors Sin*, i. e. All *Sins*: But proper Names of Rivers, Ships, Hills, &c. frequently have *The*; as, *The Thames*, *The Britannia*, *The Alps*.

**NOTE.** 2. That the Vocative has none of these Articles, and the Plural wants the Indefinite.

**NOTE.** 3. That when an Adjective is joined with a Substantive, the Article put before both, as, *A good Man*, *The good Man*: And the Definite is put before the Adjective when the Substantive is understood; as, *The just all live by Faith*, i. e. *The just Men*.

**III.** The English hath two *Numbers* as the Latin, and the Plural is commonly made by putting an *s* to the Singular; as, *Book*, *Books*.

**Exc. 1.** Such as end in *ch*, *sh*, *f* and *x*, which have *es* added to their Singulars; as, *Church-es*, *Brush-es*, *Witness-es*, *Box-es*. Where it is to be noticed, that such Words have a Syllable more in the Plural than in the Singular Number. Which likewise happens to all Words ending in *ce*, *ge*, *ie*, *ze*; as, *aces*, *Agess*, *Houses*, *Mazes*. The Reason of this proceeds from the near approach these Terminations have in their Sound to an *s*, so that their Plurals could not be distinguished from the Sing. without the Addition of another syllable. And for the same Reason, Verbs of these Terminations have a Syllable added to them in their third Person Sing. of the present Tense.

**Exc. 2.** Words that end in *f* or *fe*, have their Plural in *vess*; as, *Calf*, *aves*; *Leaf*, *Leaves*; *Wife*, *Wives*: But not always, for *Hoof*, *Roof*, *rief*, *Mischief*, *Dwarf*, *Strike*, *Muff*, &c. retain *f*. *Staff* has *Staves*.

**Exc. 3.** Some have their Plural in *en*; as, *Man*, *Men*; *Woman*, *Women*; *child*, *Children*; *Chick*, *Chickens*; *Brother*, *Brothers* or *Bretbren*; (which last is seldom used but in Sermons, or in a burlesque Sense.)

**Exc. 4.** Some are more irregular; as, *Die*, *Dice*; *Mouse*, *Mice*; *Lion*, *ice*; *Goose*, *Geese*; *Foot*, *Feet*; *Tooth*, *Teeth*; *Penny*, *Pence*; *Sow*, *Sows*; *Swine*; *Cow*, *Cows*, and *Kine*.

**Exc. 5.** Some are the same in both Numbers; as, *Sheep*, *Hose*, *Swine*, *icken*, *Pease*, *Deer*; *Fish* and *Fishes*, *Mile* and *Miles*, *Horse* and *Horses*.

**NOTE.** That as Nouns in *y* do often change *y* into *ie*, so these have rather than *ys* in the Plural; as, *Cberry*, *Cberries*.

An English Noun is thus declin'd,

*A*, *The*

Nom.	<i>King</i> ,	Nom.	<i>Kings</i> ,
Gen. of	<i>King</i> ,	Gen. of	<i>Kings</i> ,
Dat. to [for]	<i>King</i> ,	Dat. to [for]	<i>Kings</i> ,
Acc.	<i>King</i> ,	Acc.	<i>Kings</i> ,
Voc. O	<i>King</i> ,	Voc. O	<i>King</i> ,
Abl. with, from, in, by,	<i>King</i> :	Abl. with, from, in, by,	<i>Kings</i> :

## 8 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

### Prima Declinatio.

M. **Q**uomodo dignoscitur  
Prima Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum & Da-  
tivum singularem in æ diph-  
thongon.

M. Quot habet Termina-  
tiones?

D. Quatuor; a, e, as, es;  
ut,

Penna, Penelope, Æneas, Anchises.

Penna, a Pen, Fem.

Sing.

Nom. penna,	a pen.	Nom. pennæ,	pens.	a, æ,
Gen. pennæ,	of a pen.	Gen. pennarum,	of pens.	æ, arum
Dat. pennæ,	to a pen.	Dat. pennis,	to pens.	æ, is,
Acc. pennam,	a pen.	Acc. pennas,	pens.	am, as,
Voc. penna,	O pen.	Voc. pennæ,	O pens.	a, æ,
Abl. penna,	with a pen.	Abl. pennis,	with pens.	a: is.

Plur.

Termina-  
tions.

¶ After the same manner you may decline *Litera*, a Letter; *Via*, a Way; *Galea*, an Helmet; *Tunica*, a Coat; *Toga*, a Gown.

*A* is a Latin Termination, *e*, *as* and *es* are Greek.

Nouns in *a* and *e* are Feminine, in *as* and *es* Masculine.

RULE. *Filia*, a Daughter; *Nata*, a Daughter; *Dea*, a Goddess; *Anima*, the Soul, with some others, have more frequently *abus* than *is* in their Dat. and Abl. Plur. to distinguish them from Masculines in *us* of the second Declension.

¶ In declining Greek Nouns observe the following Rules.

1. Greek Nouns in *as* [and *a*] have sometimes their Accusative [with the Poets] in *an*; *as*, *Æneas*, *Æneam* vel *Ænean*; *Ossa*, *Ossam* vel *Ossan*.]

2. Those in *e* have their Accusative in *en*, and their Vocative and Ablative in *e*: *As*,

Nom. Anchises,

Voc. Anchife;

Accus. Anchisen,

Ablat. Anchise.

3. Nouns in *e* have their Genitive in *es*, their Accusative in *en*, their Dative, Vocative and Ablative in *e*: *As*,

Nom. Penelope,

Dat. Penelope,

Voc. Penelope,

Abl. Penelope.

Gen. Penelopes,

Acc. Penelopen,

[As to the Dative of Words in *e*, I have followed Probus and Priscian among the Antients; Lilly, Alvarus, Vossius, Messieurs de Port Royal, Johnson &c. among the Moderns. And tho' none of them cite any Example, yet I remember to have observed three such Datives, viz. *Cybele* in Virg. *Æd. XI. 768.* *Penelope* in Martial. *Epig. XI. 8, 5.* and *Epigone* in *Reinesii Syntag. Inscript.* Class.

## Part II. Chap. I. of Nouns.

II

S. Per Genitivum singulari  
lēm in *is*, & Dativum in *i*.

M. Quot habet Termina-  
tiones seu syllabas finales?

D. Septuaginta & unam.

M. Quot habet literas fi-  
nales?

D. Undecim; *a, e, o, c, d,*  
*i, n, r, s, t, x; ut,*

*Diadema, a Crown; Sedile, a Seat; Sermo, Speech; Lac,*  
*Milk; David, a Man's Name; Animal, a living Creature;*  
*Vetēn, a Comb; Pater, a Father; Rūpes, a Rock; Caput,*  
*the Head; Rex, a King.*

*Sermo, Speech, Masc.*

*Sing.*

*Nom. sermo,*

*Gen. sermonis,*

*Dat. sermoni,*

*Acc. sermonem,*

*Voc. sermo,*

*Abl. sermonē:*

*Plur.*

*Nom. sermones,*

*Gen. sermonum,*

*Dat. sermonibus,*

*Acc. sermones,*

*Voc. sermones,*

*Abl. sermonibus.*

*Terminations.*

*a, e, o, &c. es, a,*

*is, um, ium,*

*i, ibus,*

*em, es, a,*

*a, e, o, &c. es, a,*

*e, i: ibus.*

*Sedile, a Seat, Neut.*

*Sing.*

*Nom. sedile,*

*Gen. sedilia,*

*Dat. sedili,*

*Acc. sedilia,*

*Voc. sedile,*

*Abl. sedili:*

*Plur.*

*Nom. sedilia,*

*Gen. sedilium,*

*Dat. sedilibus,*

*Acc. sedilia,*

*Voc. sedilia,*

*Abl. sedilibus.*

*As Sermo, so most Substantives of  
this Declension in *a, o, c, d, n, t, x,*  
*er, or, ur, as, os, us* (except their  
Acc. and Voc. when they are Neuters,  
or when they want the Plural Num-  
ber.) Also (when they have more Syl-  
lables in their Gen. than Nom.) all  
Words in *es*, and most of those in *is*.*

Of the final Letters of the third Declension, Six are peculiar to it, *o, e, i, u, t, x*; the other five are common to other Declensions, viz. *a, n, r, s, z*. The copious final Letters are, *o, n, r, s, x*.

The copious final Syllables are, *io, do, go, en, er, or, as, es, is, os, us, ns, rs, ps.* All Nouns in *a* of this Declension are originally Greek, and have always an *a* before it. There are only two Words in *c*; *Lac*, Milk; and *Halec*, a leering. Words in *d* are proper Names of Men, and very rare. There are only three Words in *t*, viz. *Caput*, the Head; *Sinciput*, the Fore-head; *Ostent*, the Hind head.

1. The Terminations *er, or, os, o, n,*
2. The Terminations *io, do, go, en, er, as, es, is, os, us, ns, rs, ps,* } are Masculine.
3. The Terminations *x, and s after a Consonant,* } are Feminine.
3. The Terminations *a, c, e, i, men, ar, ur, us, nt,* } are Neuter.

But from these there are many Exceptions.

NOTE,

## 12 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

NOTE, 1. That for the most part the Genitive hath a Syllable more than the Nominative; and where it is otherwise, they generally end in *e*, *es*, or *is*.

NOTE, 2. That whatever Letter or Syllable comes before *is* in the Genitive, must run through the other Cases (except the Accusative and Vocative Sing. of Neuters) as, *Thema*, -*atis*, -*ati*, -*ate*, a Theme; *Sanguis*, -*guinis*, Blood; *Iter*, -*tineris*, a Journey; *Carmen*, -*minis*, a Verse; *Judex*, -*dicis*, a Judge.

### R E G U L Æ.

1. *Nomina in e, & Neutra in al & ar* habent *i* in Ablativo.

2. Quæ habent *e* tantum in Ablativo faciunt Genitivum pluralem in *um*.

3. Quæ habent *i* tantum, vel *e aut i* simul, faciunt *ium*.

4. Neutra quæ habent *e* in Ablativo singulari habent *a* in Nominativo, Accusativo & Vocativo plurali.

5. At quæ habent *i* in Ablativo, faciunt *ia*.

### R U L E S.

1. *Nouns in e, and Neuters in al and ar, have i in the Ablative.*

2. *These which have e only in the Ablative make their Genitive plural in um.*

3. *These which have i only, or e and i together, make ium.*

4. *Neuters which have e in their Ablative sing. have a in the Nominative, Accusative and Vocative plural.*

5. *But those which have i in the Ablative, make ia.*

### 1. EXCEP TIONS in the Accusative Singular.

1. Some Nouns in *is* have *im* in the Accusative; as, *Vis*, *vim*, Strength; *Tussis*, the Cough; *Sitis*, Thirst; *Buris*, the Beam of a Plough; *Ravis*, Hoarseness; *Amphis*, a Mason's Rule. To which add Names of Rivers in *is*; as, *Tybris*, *Thamesis*, which the Poets sometimes make in *in*.

2. Some in *is* have *em* or *im*; as, *Navis*, a Ship; *Puppis*, the Stern; *Scutis*, an Ax; *Clavis*, a Key; *Febris*, a Fever; *Pelvis*, a Basin; *Refis*, a Rope; *Turris*, a Tower; *Navem vel navim*, &c.

### 2. EXCEP TIONS in the Ablative Singular.

1. Nouns which have *im* in the Accusative have *i* in the Ablative, as, *Vis*, *vim*, *vi*, &c. Those that have *em* or *im*, have *e* or *i*; as, *Navis*, *nudem*, *vel navim*, *nave vel navi*.

2. *Canalis*, *Vetus*, *Bipennis*, have *i*: *Avis*, *Amnis*, *Ignis*, *Unguis*, *Rus*, and *Imber*, with some others, have *e* or *i*; but most commonly *e*.

3. These Neuters in *ar* have *e*; *Fas*, *Jubar*, *Nectar* and *Hepar*: *Sal* also has *sale*.

### 3. EXCEP TIONS in the Genitive Plural.

1. Nouns of one Syllable in *as*, *is*, and *s*, with a Consonant before it, have *ium*; as, *As*, *assum*; *Lis*, *lithum*; *Urbs*, *urbium*.

2. Also Nouns in *es* and *is*, not increasing in their Genitive; as, *Vallum*, *Rapes*, *rupium*. Except *Panis*, *Canis*, *Vates* and *Volucris*.

3. To which add *Caro*, *Cor*, *Cos*, *Dos*, *Mus*, *Nix*, *Nox*, *Linter*, *Sal*, *Unguis*.

NOTE, That when the Genitive Plural ends in *ium*, the Accusative frequently instead of *es* has *eis* or *is*; as, *omneis*, *parteis*, or *ownis*, *partis* for *omnes*, *partes*.

## Of Greek Nouns.

Greek Nouns have sometimes their Genitive in *os*: And these are 1. Such as increase their Genitive with *o*; as, *Arcas*, *arcadis* vel *Arcados*, an Arcadian; *Briseis*, *eidis* vel *eidos*, a Woman's Name. 2. Such as increase in *os* pure, i. e. with a Vowel before it; as, *Heresis*, *-eos*, vel *-ios*, an Heresy. 3. To these add *Sphyngos*, *Strymonos* and *Panos*.

NOTE. That *is* is more frequent, except in the second Kind, and Patrionymsicks of the first.

II. 1. Greek Words which increase their Genitive in *is* or *os* not pure, (i.e. with a Consonant before it) have frequently their Accusative sing. in *a*, and plur. in *as*; as, *Lampas*, *lampadis*, *lampada*, *lampadas*; also, *Minos*, *Minois*, *Minoa*; *Tros*, *Trois*, *Troa*, *Troas*; *Heros*, *herois*, *heroa*, *heroas*. 2. Words in *is* or *os* whose Genitive ends in *os* pure, have their Accusative in *im* or *in*, and *ym* or *yn*; as, *Heresis*, *-eos*, *heresim* or *-in*, *Cbelys*, *lyos*, a Lute, *cbelym* or *-ym*. 3. Of Words in *is* which have their Genitive in *dis* or *dos*, Masculines have their Accusative for the most part in *im* or *in*, seldom in *dem*, and never in *da*, that I know of; as, *Paris*, *Parim*, vel *Paris*, vel *Paridem*; Feminines have most commonly *dem* or *da*, and seldom *im* or *is* as, *Briseis*, *Briseidem* vel *Briseida*.

III. Feminines in *o* have *us* in their Genitive, and *o* in their other Cases; as, *Dido*, *Didus*, *Dido*, &c. or they may be declined after the Latin Form, *Didonis*, *Didoni*, &c. which *Juno* (as being of a Latin original) always follows.

IV. Greek Nouns in *s* frequently throw away *s* in their Vocative; as, *Calchas*, *Achilles*, *Paris*, *Tiphsy*, *Orpheus*; *Calcha*, *Astille*, *Pari*, *Tiphy*, *Orpheu*.

V. Greek Nouns have *um*, (and sometimes *en*) in their Genitive plural; as, *Epigrammatibus*, *Heresibus*) and very rarely *inn*.

VI. Greek Nouns in *ma* have most frequently *is* in their Dative and Ablative plur. as, *Poema*, *poematis*, because of old they said *poematum*, *ti*. *Bos* has *bom*, and *bobus* or *bubus*.

## Quarta Declinatio.

M. Quomodo dignoscitur  
Quarta Declinatio?

D. per Genitivum singula-  
rem in *us*, & Dativum in *ui*.

M. Quot habet Termina-  
tiones?

D. Duas; *us* & *u*; *ut*,  
*Fruetus*, *Fruit*; *Cornu*, an Horn.

Fruetus, *Fruit*, Masc.

*Nom.* fructus,  
*Gen.* fructus,  
*Dat.* fructui,  
*Acc.* fructum,  
*Voc.* fructus,  
*Abl.* fructu:

## The Fourth Declension.

M. How is the Fourth De-  
clension known?

S. By the Genitive singular  
in *us*, and the Dative in *ui*.

M. How many Termina-  
tions hath it?

S. Two; *us* and *u*; *as*,

*Cornu*, an Horn.

## Terminations.

<i>Nom.</i> fructus,	<i>us</i> ,	<i>us</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i> fructum,	<i>us</i> ,	<i>uum</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i> fructibus,	<i>ui</i> ,	<i>ibus</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i> fructus,	<i>um</i> ,	<i>us</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i> fructus,	<i>us</i> ,	<i>us</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i> fructibus,	<i>u</i> :	<i>ibus</i> ,

*Cornu*

14 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

	Cornu, an Horn, Neut.	
Sing.	Nom. cornu, Gen. cornu, Dat. cornu, Acc. cornu, Voc. cornu, Abl. cornu:	Plur.
	Nom. cornua, Gen. cornuum, Dat. cornibus, Acc. cornua, Voc. cornua, Abl. cornibus.	
		As Fractus, so Vul- tus; the Countenance, Manus, the Hand, Fem. Catus, a Cat or Chase.
		As Cornu, so Gen. the Knee; Vena, a Spit; Tonitru, Thunder.

Nouns in *us* of this Declension are generally Masculine, and those in *al* Neuter, and indeclinable in the singular Number.

**RULE.** Some Nouns have *ubus* in their Dative and Ablative, Plural, viz. *Arcus*, a Bow; *Artus*, a Joint; *Lacus*, a Lake; *Atus*, a Needle; *Portus*, a Port or Harbour; *Partus*, a Birth; *Tribus*, a Tribe; *Vena*, a Spit.

**NOTE.** That of old Nouns of this Declension belonged to the Third, and were declined as *Grus*, *gruis*, a Cran; thus, *Fruetus*, *fructus*, *fructui*, *fruc-  
tum*, *fructus*: *Fruetus*, *fructum*, *fructibus*, *fructus*, *fructus*, *fructu-  
bus*. So that all the Cases are contracted except the Dative sing. and Genitive plur. There are some Examples of the Genitive in *us* yet extant; as on the contrary there are several of the Dative in *u*.

The blessed Name Iesu-  
sus is thus declined.

Sing.	Nom. Iesu-, Gen. Iesu, Dat. Iesu, Acc. Iesum, Voc. Iesu, Abl. Iesu.	Plur.	Nom. domus, Gen. domus, v. -mi. Dat. domui, v. -mo. Acc. domum, Voc. domus, Abl. domo.	Nom. domus, Gen. domorum, v. -uum. Dat. domibus, Acc. domos, v. -us. Voc. domus, Abl. domibus.
-------	--	-------	---	---

[Note, That the Genitive domi is only used when it signifies, At home domo, the Dative, is found in Horace, Epist. I. 10. 13.]

### Quinta Declinatio.

M. Q uoniam dignoscitur  
Quinta Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum singu-  
larem & Dativum in ei.

M. Quot habet Termina-  
tiones?

D. Unam, nempe es; ut,  
Res, a Thing, Fem.

Sing.	Nom. res, Gen. rei, Dat. rei, Acc. rem, Voc. res, Abl. re:	Plur.
-------	---	-------

Nom. res. Gen. rerum, Dat. rebus, Acc. res, Voc. res, Abl. rebus.
--

### The Fifth Declension

M. H ow is the Fifth D-  
eclension known?

S. By the Genitive and D-  
ative singular in ei.

M. How many Termino-  
nations hath it?

S. One, namely es; as,

Termination

es,	es,	(a)
ei,	erum,	
ei,	ebus,	
em,	es,	edefin-
es,	es,	or is,
e:	ebus.	(b) e

No

Nouns of the Fifth Declension are not above fifty, and are all Feminine except *Dies*, a Day, Masc. or Fem., and *Meridies*, the Mid-day or Noon, Masc. All Nouns of this Declension end in *ies*, except three, *Fides*, Faith; *Spes*, Hope; *Aes*, a Thing.

And all Nouns in *ies* are of the Fifth, except these four; *Abies*, a Fir-tree; *Aies*, a Ram; *Paries*, a Wall, and *Quies*, Rest; which are of the Third. Most Nouns of this Declension want the Genitive, Dative and Ablative plural; and many of them want the Plural altogether.

*General Remarks on all the Declensions.*

1. The Genitive plural of the first Four is sometimes contracted, especially by Poets; as, *Calicolum*, *Deum*, *Mensum*, *Currum*; for *Calicularum*, *Devorum*, *Mensium*, *Currum*.

2. When the Genitive of the second ends in *ii*, the last *i* is sometimes taken away by Poets; as *Tuguri* for *Tugurii*. We read also *Aulae* for *aula* in the First, and *Fide* for *fides* in the Fifth; and so of other like Words.

*Declinatio Adjectivorum.*

**A**djectiva sunt vel primæ & secundæ Declinationis, vel tertiae tantum.

Omnia Adjectiva habentia ttes Terminationes (præter (a) undecim) sunt primæ & secundæ: At quæ unam vel duas Terminationes habent, sunt tertiae.

Adjectiva primæ & secundæ habent Masculinum in *us*, (b) *er*; Fœmininum semper in *a*, Neutrum semper in *um*; ut,

*Bonus, bona, bonum, good; Tenuis, tenua, tenuerum, tender.*

*Bonus, bona, bonum, good.*

*Sing.*

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>bon-us</i> ,	<i>-i</i> ,	<i>-um</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>bon-i</i> ,	<i>-x</i> ,	<i>-i</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>bon-o</i> ,	<i>-x</i> ,	<i>-o</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>bon-um</i> ,	<i>-am</i> ,	<i>-um</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>bon-e</i> ,	<i>-i</i> ,	<i>-um</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>bon-o</i> ,	<i>-i</i> ,	<i>-o</i> :

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>bon-i</i> ,	<i>-i</i> ,	<i>-a</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>bon-orum</i> ,	<i>-arum</i> ,	<i>-orum</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>bon-is</i> ,	<i>-is</i> ,	<i>-is</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>bon-os</i> ,	<i>-as</i> ,	<i>-a</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>bon-i</i> ,	<i>-i</i> ,	<i>-a</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>bon-is</i> ,	<i>-is</i> ,	<i>-is</i> :

(a) Viz. *acer*, *alacer*, *celer*, *ciculus*, *saluber*, *volucr*, *campeller*, *equester*, *edester*, *paluster*, *silvester*; which are of the Third, and have their Masc. in *or is*, their Fem. in *is*, and Neut. in *e*.

(b) *Fur*, *fur*, *full*, was of old *saturnus*.

*Tener*

# 16 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue;

Tener, tenera, tenerum, tender.

Sing. Plur.

<i>N.</i> ten-er, -era, -erum,	<i>N.</i> ten-eri, -eræ,	-era,
<i>G.</i> ten-eri, -eræ, -eri,	<i>G.</i> ten-erorum, -erarum, -erorum,	
<i>D.</i> ten-ero, -eræ, -ero,	<i>D.</i> ten-erie, -eris,	-eris,
<i>A.</i> ten-erum, -eram, -erum,	<i>A.</i> ten-eros, -eras,	-era,
<i>V.</i> ten-er, -era, -erum,	<i>V.</i> ten-eri, -eræ,	-era,
<i>A.</i> ten-ero, -era, -ero:	<i>A.</i> ten-eris, -eris,	-eris.

Adjectives are declined as three Substantives of the same Terminations and Declensions: As in the Examples above, *bonus*, like *dominus*; *tener*, like *gener*; *bond* and *tenera*, like *penna*; *bonum* and *tenerum*, like *regnum*. Therefore the Ancients, as is clear from *Varro, lib. 3. de Anal.* declined every Gender separately, and not all three jointly, as we now commonly do: And perhaps it may not be amiss to follow this Method at first, especially if the Boy is of a slow Capacity.

Of Adjectives in *er*, some retain the *e*, as *tener*. So *miser*, -era, -erum, wretched; *liber*, -era, -erum, free; and all Compounds in *ger* and *fer*. Others lose it, as, *pulcher*, *pulchra*, *pulchrum*, fair; *niger*, *gra*, -grum, black.

These following Adjectives, *unus*, one; *totus*, whole; *solus*, alone; *ullus*, any; *nullus*, none; *alius*, another of many; *alter*, another, or one of two; *neuter*, neither; *uter*, whether, with its Compounds; *uterque*, both; *uterlibet*, *uterois*, which of the two you please; *alteruter*, the one or the other; have their Genitive singular in *ius* and Dative in *i*.

## Adiectiva tertiae Declinationis.

### 1. Unius Terminacionis.

Felix, happy.

Sing.

<i>N.</i> fel-ix, -ix,	-ix,	-ix,	<i>N.</i> fel-ices, -ices,	-icia,
<i>G.</i> fel-icis, -icis,	-icis,	-icis,	<i>G.</i> fel-icum, -icum,	-icum
<i>D.</i> fel-ici, -ici,	-ici,	-ici,	<i>D.</i> fel-icibus, -icibus,	-icibus
<i>A.</i> fel-icem, -icem,	-icem,	-ix,	<i>A.</i> fel-ices, -ices,	-icia,
<i>V.</i> fel-ix, -ix,	-ix,	-ix,	<i>V.</i> fel-ices, -ices,	-icia,
<i>A.</i> fel-ice, vel-ici, &c.			<i>A.</i> fel-icibus, -icibus,	-icibus

### 2. Duarum Terminacionum.

Mitis, mite, meek.

Sing.

<i>N.</i> mitis, mitis,	mitis,	mite,	<i>N.</i> mites, mites,	mitia,
<i>G.</i> mitis, mitis,	mitis,	mitis,	<i>G.</i> mitium, mitium,	mitium
<i>D.</i> miti, miti,	miti,	miti,	<i>D.</i> mitibus, mitibus,	mitibus
<i>A.</i> mitem, mitem,	mitem,	mite,	<i>A.</i> mites, mites,	mitia,
<i>V.</i> mitis, mitis,	mitis,	mite,	<i>V.</i> mites, mites,	mitia,
<i>A.</i> miti, miti,	miti:	miti:	<i>A.</i> mitibus, mitibus,	mitibus

Plur.

Mitio

## Part II. Chap. I. of Mown.

1

Mitior, mitius, Meeker.

Sing.

Plur.

miti-or,	-or,	-us,	N. miti-ores, -ores, -bra;
miti-oris,	-oris,	-oris,	G. miti-orum, -orum, -orum.
miti-ori,	-ori,	-ori,	D. miti-oribus, -ribus, -ribus;
miti-orem,	-orem,	-us,	A. miti-ores, -ores, -ora,
miti-or,	-or,	-us,	V. miti-ores, -ores, -ora,
miti-ore vel -ori,			A. miti-oribus, -ribus, -ribus.

### 3. Trium Terminacionum.

### 3. Of three Terminations.

Acer vel acris, acris, acre, Sharp.

Sing.

Plur.

a-cervel-cris,	-cris,	-cre,	N. a-cre-s, -cre-s, -cria,
a-cris,	-cris,	-cris,	G. a-crium, -rium, -rium,
a-cri,	-cri,	-eri,	D. a-cribus, -ribus, -ribus;
a-crem,	-crem,	-cre,	A. a-cre-s, -cre-s, -cria,
a-cervel-cris,	-cris,	-cre,	V. a-cre-s, -cre-s, -cria,
a-cri,	-cri,	-cri:	A. a-cribus, -ribus, -ribus.

## R E G U L A E.

1. Adjectiva tertiae Declinationis habent e vel i in Ablativo singulari.

2. At si neutrum sit in e, blativus habet i tantum.

3. Genitivus pluralis desit in ium; & Neutrum Nominativi, Accusativi & Vocativi in ia.

4. Excipe Comparativa, que um & a postulant.

## R U L E S.

1. *Adjectives of the Third Declension have e or i in the Ablative singular.*

2. *But if the Neuter be in e, the Ablative has i only.*

3. *The Genitive plural ends in ium; and the Neuter of the Nominative, Accusative and Vocative in ia.*

4. *Except Comparatives, which require um and a.*

## E X C E P T I O N S.

1. *Dives, Hospes, Sospes, Superfles, Juvenis, Senex and Pauper have e in Ablat. Sing. and consequently um in the Genit. Plur.*

2. *Compos, Impos, Confors, Inops, Vigil, Supplex, Uber, Degener and uber; also Compounds ending in caps, fax, pes and corpor; as, Princeps, trifex, Bipex, Tricorpor, have um, not ium.*

Note. That all these have seldom the Neut. Sing. and never almost the Plur. in the Nom. and Accus. To which add *Memor*, which has memori, and memorum, and *Locuples*, which has locupletium; also, *Deses*, *Rebes*, *Hebes*, *Prapes*, *Teres*, *Concolor*, *Verticolor*; which being hard to be met with in the Genit. Plur. 'tis a Doubt whether they should have or ium, tho I incline most to the former.

## 18 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

3. *Par has pari; vetus, vetera, &c veterum;* *Plus* (which hath only *Neut.* in the Sing.) *has plure, and plures, plura (or pluria) plurimum.*

**NOTE.** 1. That Comparatives, and Adjectives in *ns*, have more frequently *e* than *i*, and Participles in the Ablatives called *Absolute* have always *as, Carolo regnante, not regnanti.*

**NOTE.** 2. That Adjectives joined with Substantives Neuter, hardly ever have *e* but *i*; as *victori ferro, not victrice.*

**NOTE.** 3. That Adjectives when they are put Substantively, have often *e*; as, *Affinis, Familiaris, Rivalis, Sodalis, &c.* So *Par*, a Match; *Cum pare quaque suo coeunt.* Ovid.

### OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

1. **T**HE Ordinal and Multiplicative Numbers (see Chap. IX.) are scarcely declined. The Distributive wants the Singular, as also the Cardinal, except *Unus*, which is declined as in p. 16. and hath the Final, when joined with a Substantive that wanteth the Sing. as, *Una* lit. one Letter; *Una mœnia*, one Wall; or when several Particulars are considered complexly as making one Compound; as, *Uni sex dies*, i. e. One Space of Six Days; *Una vestimenta*, i. e. One Suit of Apparel. *Pluri.*

*Duo* and *Tres* are declined after this manner.

<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Nom.</i> <i>duo</i> ,	<i>duse</i> ,	<i>duo</i> ,	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Nom.</i> <i>tres</i> ,	<i>tres</i> ,	<i>tria</i> ,
	<i>Gen.</i> <i>duorum</i> ,	<i>duarum</i> ,	<i>duorum</i> ,		<i>Gen.</i> <i>trium</i> ,	<i>trium</i> ,	<i>trium</i> ,
	<i>Dat.</i> <i>duobus</i> ,	<i>duabus</i> ,	<i>duobus</i> ,		<i>Dat.</i> <i>tribus</i> ,	<i>tribus</i> ,	<i>tribus</i> ,
	<i>Acc.</i> <i>duos vel o</i> ;	<i>duas</i> ,	<i>duo</i> ,		<i>Acc.</i> <i>tres</i> ,	<i>tres</i> ,	<i>tria</i> ,
	<i>Voc.</i> <i>duo</i> ,	<i>duse</i> ,	<i>duo</i> ,		<i>Voc.</i> <i>tres</i> ,	<i>tres</i> ,	<i>tria</i> ,
	<i>Abl.</i> <i>duobus</i> ,	<i>duabus</i> ,	<i>duobus</i> .		<i>Abl.</i> <i>tribus</i> ,	<i>tribus</i> ,	<i>tribus</i> .

*Ambo*, Both, is declined as *Duo*.

2. From *Quatuor* to *Centum* are all indeclinable.

3. From *Centum* to *Mille*, they are declined thus, *Ducenti, ducenta, ducenti; ducentorum, ducentarum, ducentorum, &c.*

4. As to *Mille, Varro*, and all the Grammarians after him, down to the Age, make it (when it is put before a Genitive plural) a Substantive indeclinable in the Sing. and in the Plur. declin'd, *Millia, millium, millibus*; when it hath a Substantive joined to it in any other Case, they make it Adjective plural indeclinable. But *Sciopius*, and after him *Grovovius*, contend that *Mille* is always an Adjective plural; and under that Terminus of all Cases and Genders; but that it hath two Neuters, *tac Mille*, and *Millia*. That the first is used, when one thousand is signified, and the cond when more than one. And that, where it seems to be a Substantive versing a Genit. *Multitudo, Numerus, Manus, Pecunia, Pondus, Spatii Corpus*, or the like, are understood. I own that formerly I was of this sentiment; but now the weighty Reasons adduced by the most accurate Persons, incline me rather to follow the ancient Grammarians.

After the Declension of Substantives and Adjectives separately, it may be improper to exercise the Learner with some Examples of a Substantive Adjective declin'd together; which will both make him more ready in the declensions, and render the Dependence of the Adjective upon the Substantive more familiar to him. Let the Examples at first be of the same Terminatus and Declensions; as, *Dominus justus, a just Lord*; *Penna bona, a good Pen*; *Genium eximum, an excellent Wit*; Afterwards let them be different in or both; as, *Puer probus, a good Boy*; *Letio facilis, an easy Lesson*; *Optimus, an excellent Poet*; *Fruitus dulcis, sweet Fruit*; *Dies faustus, a happy Day*, &c. And if the Boy has as yet been taught Writing, let him write them ther in the School, or at home, to berevified by the Master next Day.

OF IRREGULAR NOUNS.

here (for we cannot here make a full Enumeration of them) may be reduced to the following Scheme.

1. Defective,	1. Substantives,	1. Number,	{ Sing. as, <i>Liberi, Mina, Arma.</i>				
			Plur. as, <i>Aer, Humus, Eumen.</i>				
2. Adjectives.	Waiting.	2. Cases,	{ Nom. & Voc. { Sing. <i>Ditionis.</i>				
			Gen. { Gen. <i>Chaos.</i>				
3. Variable,	Waiting.	or having only	Dat. { Dat. <i>Plus.</i>	Voc. { Voc. <i>Ego.</i>			
1. Too much,	In Gender having Sing.	1. Gender,	Gen. Dat. & Abl. Plur. as, <i>Mel.</i>	Three; as, <i>Dica, dicam, dicas.</i>			
2. Too little, as Indeclinables,	In Declension being of the	2. Number,	Three; as, <i>Suppetia, Suppetias.</i>	Two; as, <i>One; as, Dicit, Inficis, noctu.</i>			
3. Redundant,	In Termination	3. Case,	Masc. as, <i>catera, caterum.</i>	Masc. as, <i>Quisquis, quicquid.</i>			
3. Redundant,	In Gender	or having the	Fem. as, <i>Compos.</i>	Neut. as, <i>Sicelis.</i>			
3. Redundant,	In Declension	and Plur.	Masc. & Fem. as, <i>Tros.</i>	Plur. as, <i>Unusquisque.</i>			
1. & 2. as, <i>Delicium, delicia.</i>	Neut. as, <i>Manalus, Manala.</i>	Neut. as, <i>Carbasus, carbasa.</i>	Masc. & Neut. as, <i>Locus, -ci &amp; -ca.</i>	Masc. as, <i>Celum, cali.</i>			
1. & 2. as, <i>Laurus, -ri &amp; -rus.</i>	Fem. as, <i>Epulum, epula.</i> [ <i>na.</i>	Fem. as, <i>Yas, -sis &amp; -sa, forum,</i>	Masc. & Neut. as, <i>Frenum, ni &amp;</i>	altogether; as, <i>Fas.</i>			
1. & 2. as, <i>Cornu.</i>	in the Sing as, <i>Cornu.</i>						
only; as, <i>Helena, Helene.</i>	& Gender; as, <i>Tignus, tignum.</i>	& Decl. as, <i>Materia, materies.</i>	Gend & Decl. as, <i>Aether, athra.</i>	only; as, <i>bis &amp; hoc Vulgus.</i>			
only; as, <i>Fames, famis, of tho-</i>	3d, Abl. same of the 5th,	because the last Syllable is	always long with the Poets.	Notes,			

NOTE, 1. That the *Defective* Nouns are not so numerous as is commonly believed.

NOTE, 2. That these which *vary too little*, may be ranked under the *Etive*; and these which *vary too much*, under the *Redundant*. E. G. *colorum* comes not from *Cælum*, but from *Cælus*; and *Vasa, vasorum* not *vas, vasis*, but from *vasum, vasi*: But Custom, which alone gives Law to Languages, has dropt the Singular, and retained the Plural; and so of course.

### De Comparatione.

M. **Q**uot sunt Gradus Comparationis?

D. *Tres*; *Positivus, Comparativus & Superlativus.*

M. Quotæ Declinationis sunt hi gradus?

D. *Positivus est Adjectivum Primæ & Secundæ Declinationis, vel Tertiæ tantum; Comparativus est semper Tertiæ; Superlativus semper Primæ & Secundæ.*

M. Unde formatur Comparativus gradus?

D. A proximo casu Positivi in *i*, addendo pro masculino & feminino syllabam *or*, & *us* pro neutro; ut,

*Dottus, learned, Gen. docti, doctor & doctius, more learned; Mitis, meek, Dat. miti, mitier & mitius, more merciful.*

M. Unde formatur Superlativus?

D. 1. Si Positivus desinat in *er*, Superlativus formatur addendo *rimus*; ut,

*Pulcher, fair, pulcherrimus, most fair; Pauper, poor, pauperrimus, most poor.*

2. Si Positivus non desinat in *er*, Superlativus formatur a proximo casu in *i*, addendo *ffimus*; ut,

### Of Comparison.

M. **H**ow many Degrees of Comparison are there?

S. *Three; the Positive, Comparative and Superlative.*

M. Of what Declension are these Degrees?

S. The Positive is an Adjective of the First and Second Declension, or Third only. Comparative is always of the Third; the Superlative always of the First and Second.

M. Whence is the Comparative Degree formed?

S. From the next Case. Positive in *i*, by adding *or*. Masculine and Feminine Syllable *or*, and *us* for Neuter; as,

M. Whence is the Superlative formed?

S. 1. If the Positive ends in *er*, the Superlative is formed by adding *rimus*; as,

2. If the Positive ends in *er*, the Superlative is formed from the next Case in *i*, adding *ffimus*; as,

Gen. *Dotti*, *doctissimus* most learned; Dat. *Miti*, *mitis-*  
most meek.

Grammatical COMPARISON we understand three Adjective Nouns, which the two last are formed from the first, and import Comparison with that is, Heightning or Lessening of its Signification.

Consequently these Adjectives only which are capable of having their Signification increased or diminished, can be compared.

The POSITIVE signifies the Quality of a Thing simply and absolutely; *Durus*, hard; *Parvus*, little.

The COMPARATIVE heightens or lessens that Quality; as, *Durior*, harder; *Minor*, less.

The SUPERLATIVE heightens or lessens it to a very high, or very low degree; as, *Durissimus*, hardest, or most hard; *Minimus*, very little, or least. The Positive hath various Terminations; the Comparative ends always in *ius*; the Superlative always in *mus*, *ma*, *mum*.

[The positive properly speaking is no Degree of Comparison, for it does not compare Things together: However it is accounted one, because the other two are founded upon, and formed from it.]

The SIGN of the Comparative in our Language is the Syllable *er* added to an Adjective, or the Word *more* put before it.

The SIGN of the Superlative is the Syllable *eſt* added to an Adjective, or Words *very* or *most* put before it.

Or, That when the Positive is a long Word, or would otherwise sound ill by having *er* or *eſt* added to it, we commonly make the Comparative the Word *more*, and the Superlative by *most* or *very*, put before it.

And for the like Reason, the Latin Comparative is sometimes made by *Ma-* and the Superlative by *Valde* or *Maxime*, put before the Positive. And these are particularly used, when the Positive ends in *us* with a Vowel before it, as, *Pius*, godly; *Arduus*, high; *Idoneus*, fit; tho' not always.

#### IRREGULAR COMPARISONS.

1. Bonus, mehor, optimus: Good, better, best.  
Malus, pejor, pessimus: Evil, worse, worst.  
Magnus, major, maximus: Great, greater, greatest.  
Parvus, minor, minimus: Little, less, least.

*Fultus*, *plurimus*; *multa*, *plurima*; *multum*, *plurip*, *plurimum*: much, more,

*Faciliſ*, *easy*; *Humiliſ*, *low*; *Similis*, *like*; make their Superlative by adding *is* into *limus*; thus, *facillimus*, *humillimus*, *simillimus*.

*Exter*, outward; *Cicer*, hither; *Suprus*, above; *Inferus*, below; *Posterus*, hind, have regular Comparatives; but their Superlatives are, *extremus* (or *imus*,) uttermost; *ciuius*, hithertoſt; *supremus* (or *summus*,) uppermost, highest, last; *infimus* (or *imus*,) lowest; *postremus* (or *postimus*,) latest, or last.

Compounds in *Dicuſ*, *Loquuſ*, *Ficuſ* and *Voluſ*, have *entior* and *entif-*  
*erius* as, *Maledicuſ*, one that raileth; *Magniloguſ*, one that boasteth;  
*ficiuſ*, Beneficent; *Malevoluſ*, Malevolent. But these seem rather to come from Particles or Nouns in *ent*. Besides, the Comparatives and Superlatives of Adjectives derived from *Loquor* and *Facio*, are very rare; and hence has *Mirificiſſimus*, and *Plauſuſ* has *Mendacioloquiuſ*.

*Prior*, former, has *Primus*, first; *Ulterior*, farther, *Ultimus*, farthest or last; *prior*, nearer, *Proximus*, nearest or next; *Ocior*, swifter, *Ocifimus*, swiftest; their

Positives

## 22 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

Positives being out of use, or quite wanting. *Proximus* has also another Comparative formed from it, viz. *Proximior*.

6. There are also a great many other Adjectives capable of having their Signification increased, which yet want one or more of these Degrees of Comparison; as *Albus*, white, without Compar. and Superl. *Ingens*, great, *gentior*, greater, without the Superl. *Sacer*, holy, *Sacerrimus*, most holy, without the Comp. *Anterior*, former, without Post. and Superl.

¶ These three Degrees of Comparison being nothing else but three distinct Adjectives, may be declined either severally each by itself, or jointly altogether; Respect still being had to the Declensions. But the first Way is much easier, and will answer all the Purposes of Comparison as well as the other.

### C A P. II.

#### *De Pronomine.*

M. **Q** Uot sunt Pronomina  
+ simplicia?

D. Octodecim; *Ego*, *Tu*,  
*Sui*; *Ille*, *Ipse*, *Iste*, *Hic*, *Is*,  
*Quis*, *Qui*; *Meus*, *Tuus*, *Suus*,  
*Noster*, *Vester*; *Nostras*, *Ve-  
stras* & *Cujas*.

¶ Ex his tria sunt substantiva, *Ego*, *Tu*, *Sui*; reliqua quindecim sunt Adjectiva.

*Sing.* { *Nom.* *ego*, *I*,  
*Gen.* *mei*, of *me*,  
*Dat.* *mihi*, to *me*,  
*Acc.* *me*, *me*,  
*Voc.* \_\_\_\_\_  
*Abl.* *me*, with *me*:

*Ego, I.*  
*Nom.* *nos*, *we*,  
*Gen.* *nostrum* vel *nostri*, of  
*Dat.* *nobis*, to *us*,  
*Acc.* *nos*, *us*,  
*Voc.* \_\_\_\_\_  
*Abl.* *nobis*, with *us*.

*Sing.* { *Nom.* *tu*, *thou*,  
*Gen.* *tui*, of *thee*,  
*Dat.* *tibi*, to *thee*,  
*Acc.* *te*, *thee*,  
*V. tu*, *O thou*,  
*A. te*, with *thee*:

*Tu, Thou.*  
*Nom.* *vos*, ye [you]  
*Gen.* *vestrum* vel *vestri*, of  
*Dat.* *vobis*, to *you*,  
*Acc.* *vos*, *you*,  
*V. vos*, *O ye* [you]  
*A. vobis*, with *you*.

† See Chap. IX.

## Part II. Chap. II. of Pronoun. 23

*Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself.*

<i>N.</i> —————	<i>N.</i> —————
<i>G.</i> <i>sui</i> , of himself, &c.	<i>G.</i> <i>sui</i> , of themselves,
<i>D.</i> <i>sibi</i> , to himself,	<i>D.</i> <i>sibi</i> , to themselves,
<i>A.</i> <i>se</i> , himself,	<i>A.</i> <i>se</i> , themselves,
<i>V.</i> —————	<i>V.</i> —————
<i>A.</i> <i>se</i> , with himself:	<i>A.</i> <i>se</i> , with themselves.

PRONOUN is an irregular kind of Noun: Or, it is a Part of Speech which has Respect to, and supplies the Place of a Noun; as, instead of your me, I say, *Tu*, Thou, or *You*; instead of *Jacobus fecit*, James did it, *Illi fecit*, He did it, *viz.* James.

NOTE, 1. That the Dat. *Mibi* is sometimes by the Poets contracted into *Mi.*  
Note, 2. That of old the Gen. Plur. of *Ego* was *Nostrorum* and *Nostrarum*; *Tu*, *Vestrorum* and *Vestrum* (of which there are several Examples in *Plautus* and *Terence*) which were afterwards contracted into *Nostrum* and *Vestrum*.

NOTE, 3. That we use *Nostrum* and *Vestrum* after Numerals; Partitives, Comparatives and Superlatives, and *Nostris* and *Vestris* after other Nouns, and verbs; tho' there want not some Examples of these last with *Nostrum* and *Vestrum*, even in *Cicero* himself, as *Vestris* shews.

*Illi, illa, illud; He, she, that, or it.*

<i>N.</i> <i>ille</i> , <i>illa</i> , <i>illud</i> ,	<i>N.</i> <i>illi</i> , <i>illæ</i> , <i>illa</i> ,
<i>G.</i> <i>illius</i> , <i>illius</i> , <i>illius</i> ,	<i>G.</i> <i>illorum</i> , <i>illarum</i> , <i>illorum</i> ,
<i>D.</i> <i>illi</i> , <i>illi</i> , <i>illi</i> ,	<i>D.</i> <i>illis</i> , <i>illis</i> , <i>illis</i> ,
<i>A.</i> <i>illum</i> , <i>illam</i> , <i>illud</i> ,	<i>A.</i> <i>ilos</i> , <i>illas</i> , <i>illa</i> ,
<i>V.</i> <i>ille</i> , <i>illa</i> , <i>illud</i> ,	<i>V.</i> <i>illi</i> , <i>illæ</i> , <i>illa</i> ,
<i>A.</i> <i>illo</i> , <i>illa</i> , <i>illo</i> :	<i>A.</i> <i>illis</i> , <i>illis</i> , <i>illis</i> .

Ipse, ipsa, ipsum; *He himself, she herself, itself, & iste, a, istud; he, she, that*, are declined as *ille*, save only that *se* hath *ipsum* in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Sing. Neuter.

*Hic, hæc, hoc; This.*

<i>N.</i> <i>hic</i> , <i>hæc</i> , <i>hoc</i> ,	<i>N.</i> <i>hi</i> , <i>hæ</i> , <i>hæc</i> ,
<i>G.</i> <i>hujus</i> , <i>hujus</i> , <i>hujus</i> ,	<i>G.</i> <i>horum</i> , <i>harum</i> , <i>horum</i> ,
<i>D.</i> <i>huic</i> , <i>huic</i> , <i>huic</i> ,	<i>D.</i> <i>his</i> , <i>his</i> , <i>his</i> ,
<i>A.</i> <i>hunc</i> , <i>hanc</i> , <i>hoc</i> ,	<i>A.</i> <i>hos</i> , <i>has</i> , <i>hæc</i> .
<i>V.</i> <i>hic</i> , <i>hæc</i> , <i>hoc</i> ,	<i>V.</i> <i>hi</i> , <i>hæ</i> , <i>hæc</i> ,
<i>A.</i> <i>hoc</i> , <i>hac</i> , <i>hoc</i> :	<i>A.</i> <i>his</i> , <i>his</i> , <i>his</i> .

*Is, ea, id; He, she, it, or that.*

<i>N.</i> <i>is</i> , <i>ea</i> , <i>id</i> ,	<i>N.</i> <i>ii</i> , <i>eæ</i> , <i>ea</i> ,
<i>G.</i> <i>eius</i> , <i>eius</i> , <i>eius</i> ,	<i>G.</i> <i>eorum</i> , <i>carum</i> , <i>corum</i> ,
<i>D.</i> <i>ei</i> , <i>ei</i> , <i>ei</i> ,	<i>D.</i> <i>iis</i> , <i>vel eis</i> ,
<i>A.</i> <i>eum</i> , <i>eam</i> , <i>id</i> ,	<i>A.</i> <i>eos</i> , <i>eas</i> , <i>ea</i> ,
<i>V.</i> —————	<i>V.</i> —————
<i>A.</i> <i>eo</i> , <i>ea</i> , <i>eo</i> :	<i>A.</i> <i>iis</i> , <i>vel eis</i> .

*Quis.*

*Quis, quæ, quod vel quid; Who, which, what?*

*Sing.*

*Plur.*

<i>N. quis, quæ, quod vel quid;</i>	<i>N. qui, quæ,</i>
<i>G. cuius, cuius, cuius,</i>	<i>G. quorum, quarum, quoru-</i>
<i>D. cui, cui, cui,</i>	<i>D. queis vel quibus,</i>
<i>A. quem, quam, quod vel quid,</i>	<i>A. quos, quas, quæ,</i>
<i>V. —</i>	<i>V. —</i>

*A. quo, qua, quo:*

*Qui, quæ, quod; Who, which, that.*

*Sing.*

*Plur.*

<i>N. qui, quæ, quod,</i>	<i>N. qui, quæ,</i>
<i>G. cuius, cuius, cuius,</i>	<i>G. quorum, quarum, quoru-</i>
<i>D. cui, cui, cui,</i>	<i>D. queis vel quibus,</i>
<i>A. quem, quam, quod,</i>	<i>A. quos, quas, quæ,</i>
<i>V. —</i>	<i>V. —</i>

*A. quo, qua, quo:*

*A. queis vel quibus.*

*Meus, my, or mine; Tuus, thy, or thine; Suus, his own, its own, their own, are declined like Bonus, -um: And Noster, our, or ours; Vester, your, or yours, is Pulcher, -ebra, -ebrum, of the First and Second Declension. But Tuus, Suus and Vester want the Vocative; Noster and Meus have it, in which this last hath mi, (and sometimes meus) in the Masc. Sing.*

*Nostras, of our Country; Vestrás, of your Country; Cjas, of what or which Country, are declined like Felix, the Third Declension; Gen. nostratis, Dat. nostrati, &c.*

*Note, 1. That all Nouns and Pronouns which one cannot call upon, address himself unto, want the Vocative. In consequence of which many Nouns; as, Nullus, Nemo, Qualis, Quantus, Quod, &c. and several Pronouns; as, Ego, Sui, Quis, &c. want the Vocative; but not so many either of the one or the other, as is commonly taught. For which Reasons we have given Vocatives to Ille, Ipse, Hic and Idem, therein following Judgment of the great Vossius, Messieurs de Port-Royal and Johnson, who they support by the following Authorities:*

*Ello nunc, Sol, testis, &c. hac mihi terra precanti. Virg. Aen.  
Tu nihil libertas illa paterna veni. Tibul lib. 2. El. 4.*

*O nos illa, que genit aternas huic urbi tenebras attulisti. Cic. pro Fl.  
Ipse meas aether accipe summe preces. Ovid. in Ibis.*

*And the Vocative of Idem seems to be confirmed by that of Ovid. Met.  
Quique suisti*

*Hippolytus, dixit, nunc idem Verbius esto.*

*Tho' all Authors before them will only allow four Pronouns, viz. Meus, Noster and Nostras, to have the Vocative.*

*Note, 2. That Qui is sometimes used for Quis; as, Cic. Qui tantus labor? Ter. Qui eris rumor populi, si id feceris?*

## Part II. Chap. II. of Pronoun. 25

NOTE, 3. That *Quod* with its Compounds, *Aliquod*, *Quodvis*, *Quoddam*, &c. are used when they agree with a Substantive in the same Case; *Quid*, with its Compounds, *Aliquid*, *Quidvis*, *quiddam*, &c. either have no Substantive express, or govern one in the Genitive: Whence it is that these last commonly reckoned Substantives. But that *quid* as well as *quod* is originally an Adjective, its Signification plainly shews; otherwise we shall make *Tum*, *Pus*, *Tantum*, *Quantum*, &c. also Substantives, when they goe the Genitive; which yet most Grammarians agree to be Adjectives having the common Word *Negotium* understood.

NOTE, 4. That *Qui* the Relative hath oftentimes *qui* in the Ablative, and *qui* (which is remarkable) in all Genderis and Numbers, as Mr. Johnson observes by a great many Examples out of *Plautus* and *Terence*; to which he might have added one out of *C. Nepos*, III. 3.

NOTE, 5. That *Nostras*, *Vestrás* and *Cujas* are declined like *Gentile* or *Natural* Nouns in *as* of the third Decl. in Imitation of which they are formed; *Arpinas*, *Fidenas*, *Privernas*, a Man, Woman, or Thing, of or belonging to the Towns of *Arpinum*, *Fidena* or *Privernum*; and may have the Neut. well as these: (For as Cic. has *Iter Arpinas*, and *Liv. Bellum Privernas*; *Colum. has *arbustum nostras**, and *Cic. Nostratio verba*) contrary to what *Acer* teaches.

I pass over taking notice, that in old Authors, especially *Plautus*, we find *quisquis* sometimes of the Femin. Gender; *mis* and *tis* for *mei* and *his*; *hicce* for *hi*; *ibus*, *ibus*, for *his*, *is*; *illie*, *ipse*, *illae*, *que* in the *or Dat. Sing. Fem. em* for *cum*; *istes* for *istos*; *quiouis*, *qui*, for *cujus*, because they are extraordinary.]

### Of COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

Some are compounded of *Quis* and *Qui*, with some other Word or Sylle. In these *Quis* is sometimes the first, and sometimes the last Part of Word compounded; but *Qui* is always the first.

The Compounds of *Quis*, when it is put first, are *Quisnam*, who? *Quis-*  
*em*, *Quisquam*, any one; *Quisque*, every one; *Quisquis*, whosoever: Which thus declined,

*Nom.* *Gen.* *Dat.*

*Quisnam*, *quenam*, *quodnam vel quidnam*; *cujusnam*, *cuinam*.

*Quispiam*, *quæpiam*, *quodpiam vel quidpiam*; *cujuspiam*, *cuipiam*.

*Quisquam*, *quæquam*, *quodquam vel quidquam*; *cujusquam*, *cuiquam*.

*Quisque*, *quæque*, *quodque vel quidque*; *cujusque*, *cuique*.

*Quisquis*, *quæquis*, *quodquid vel quicquid*; *cujusquis*, *cuiqui*.

Also forth in their other Cases, according to the simple *Quis*. But *Quis-* has no Feminine at all, and the Neuter only in the Nominat. and Accus. *isquam* has also *quicquam* for *quidquam*. Acc. *quenquam*, without the m. The Plural is scarcely used.

The Compounds of *Quis*, when it is put last, are *Aliquis*, some; *E-*  
*s*, who? To which some add *Nequis*, *Siquis* and *Numquis*; but these more frequently read separately, *ne quis*, *si quis*, *num quis*. They are thus declined,

*Nom.* *Gen.* *Dat.*

*Aliquis*, *aliqua*, *aliiquid vel aliquid*, *alicujus*, *alicui*.

*Equis*, *ecqua*, *vel ecqua, ecquid vel ecquid*, *eccujus*, *eccui*.

*Si quis*, *si qua*, *si quid vel si quid*, *si cujus*, *si cui*.

*Ne quis*, *ne qua*, *ne quod vel ne quid*, *ne cujus*, *ne cui*.

*Num quis*, *num qua*, *num quod vel num quid*, *num cujus*, *num cui*.

NOTE, That these, and only these, have *qua* in the Nom. Sing. Fem. and m. and Acc. Plur. Neut.

## 26 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

3. The Compounds of *Qui* are *Quicunque*, whosoever; *Quidam*, som  
*Quilibet*, *Quivis*, any one; whom you please; and are thus declined,  
Nom. Gen. Dat.

*Quicunque*, *quicunque*, *quodcumque*; *cujuscumque*, *cicu quoque*  
*Quidam*, *quidam*, *quoddam vel quiddam*; *cujusdam*, *cuidam*.  
*Quilibet*, *quilibet*, *quodlibet vel quidlibet*; *cujuslibet*, *cilibet*.

*Quivis*, *quavis*, *quodvis vel quidvis*; *cujusvis*, *cuvivis*.

Some of these are twice compounded; as, *Ecquisnam*, Who? *Unusquam*, Every one. The first is scarce declin'd beyond its Nomin. and the second wants the Plur.

NOTE, 1. That all these Compounds want the Vocative, except *Quisquis*, *Aliquis*, *Quilibet*, *Unusquisque*, and perhaps some others. *Vid. Voss. p. 33*

NOTE, 2. That all these Compounds have seldom or never *quess*, but *bus*, in their Dat. and Abl. Plur.

NOTE, 3. That *Quidam* hath *quendam*, *quandam*, *quoddam vel quidam* in the Accus. Sing. and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, *quorundam* in the Genit. Plur. *m* being put instead of *m* for the better Sound, as it is for the same Reason in these Cases of *Idem*.

II. Some reckon among Compound Pronouns, *Ego*, *Tu* and *Sui*, with *Ipsa*. But in the best Books they are generally read separately; which seems necessary, because of *te ipse* and *se ipse*, where the two Words are of different Cases.

III. *Is* is compounded with the Syllable *dem*, and contracted into *Idem* the same; which is thus declined,

Sing.

Nom. *Idem*, *eadem*, *idem*, *idem*, *idem*, *idem*, *idem*, *idem*,  
Gen. *cujusdem*, *cujusdem*, *cujusdem*, *cujusdem*, *cujusdem*, *cujusdem*, *cujusdem*,  
Dat. *eidem*, *eidem*, *eidem*, *eidem*, *eidem*, *eidem*, *eidem*,  
Acc. *eundem*, *eandem*, *idem*, *idem*, *idem*, *idem*, *idem*,  
Voc. *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*, *idem*, *idem*, *idem*, *idem*,  
Abl. *eodem*, *eadem*, *eodem*: *Abl. eisdem vel iisdem*,

Plur.

IV. Most of the other Compound Pronouns are only to be found in certain Cases and Genders; as,

1. Of *iste* and *bis* is compounded Nom. *Istibis*, *istibac*, *istiboc vel istib*.  
Acc. *Isthunc*, *isthanc*, *isthoc vel isthuc*. Abl. *Isthoc*, *isthac*, *isthoc*. Nom. and Acc. Plur. Neut. *Isthac*.

2. Of *Ecce* and *Is* is compounded *Eccum*, *eccam*; Plur. *eccos*, *eccas*: As from *Ecce* and *Ille*, *Ellum*, *ellam*; *ellos*, *ellas*, in the Accusatives.

3. Of *Modus* and *is*, *bis*, *iste*, and *quis*, are compounded these Genitives *Eiusmodi*, *bujusmodi*, *issimodi*, *cujusmodi*; and sometimes with the Syllable *co*, put in the middle, *ejuscomodi*, *bujuscemodi*, &c.

4. Of *cum* and these Ablatives, *me*, *te*, *se*, *nobis*, *vobis*, *qui* or *qua*, as *quisbus*, are compounded *mecum*, *tecum*, *secum*, *nobiscum*, *vobiscum*, *quicunque* or *quocum*, and *quibuscum*.

5. To these add some Pronouns compounded with these Syllabical Additions, *met*, *te*, *ce*, *pte*, *cine*, to make their Signification more pointed and emphatical; as, *agomet*, *tute*, *bujusce*, *meapte*, *biccine*.

### REMARKS on ENGLISH PRONOUNS.

1. In the Nominative, or *Foregoing State* (as the English Grammarians call it) we use, *I*, *Thou*, *He*, *She*, *We*, *Te*, *They*, and *Who*: But in the other Cases (which they name the *Following State*) we use, *Me*, *Thee*, *Him*, *Us*, *Them* and *Whom*.

2. Wh-

## Part II. Chap. III. of Verb. 27

2. When we speak of a Person, we use *Who* and *Whom*, whether we ask a question or not; as, *Who did it?* *The Man who did it.* But if we speak of *Thing* with a Question, we use *What*; as, *What Book is that?* Without a question we use *Which*; as, *The Book which you gave me.* And then it is frequently understood; as, *The Book you gave me.*

NOTE, That *What* is often used, even without a Question, instead of *The thing which*, or *That which*; as, *I know what you design*, i. e., *The Thing which*, or *that which you design.* As, on the contrary, when it refers to some particular thing mentioned before, we make use of *which*, even with a question; as *Give me the Book. Which Book? which of the Books?*

3. This makes in the Plur. *These*, and *That* makes *Those*.

NOTE, That *That* is frequently used instead of *Who*, *Whom* or *Which*; as, *The Man that told you*, *The Man that we saw*, *The Book that I lent you.*

4. We use, *My, Thy, Her, Our, Your, Their*, when they are joined with substantives, or the Word *Own*; and *Mine, Thine, Hers, Ours, Yours, Theirs*, when the Substantive is left out or understood; as, *My Book, This book is mine*, &c.

NOTE, That with *Own*, or a Substantive beginning with a Vowel, we sometimes use *Mine* and *Thine*; as, *my Eye*, or *Mine Eyes*; *Thy own*, or *thine own*.

5. We often use *Here*, *There*, *Where*, compounded with these Particles, *of, By, Upon, About, In, With*, instead of *This, That, Which and What*, with these same Particles; as, *Hereof, Hereby, Hereupon, Hereabouts, Herewith, Herewithal, Of this, By this, Upon this, About this place, In this, With this*, &c.

6. *Whose* and *Its* are Genitives, instead of, *Of whom, of it*; and it is a fault to use *Its* for *'Tis* or *It is*, as some do.

### C A P. III.

#### *De Verbo.*

M. **Q**uomodo declinatur Verbum?

D. *Per Voces, Modos, Tempora, Numeros & Personas.*

M. Quot sunt Voces?

D. *Duæ; Activa & Passiva.*

M. Quot sunt Modi?

D. *Quatuor; Indicativus, Subjunctivus, Imperativus & Infinitivus.*

M. Quot sunt Numeri?

### C H A P. III.

#### *Of Verb,*

M. **H**ow is a Verb declined?

S. *By Voices, Moods, Tenses, Numbers and Persons.*

M. How many Voices are there?

S. Two; the Active and Passive.

M. How many Moods are there?

S. Four; Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative and Infinitive.

M. How many Numbers are there?

D. Duo;

## 28 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

D. Duo; Singularis & Pluralis.

M. Quot sunt tempora?

D. Quinque; Præsens, Præteritum imperfectum, Præteritum perfectum, Præteritum plusquamperfectum & Futurum.

M. Quot sunt Personæ?

D. Tres; Prima, Secunda  
Tertia.

S. Two; Singular and Plural.

M. How many Tenses are there?

S. Five; the Present, the Preter-imperfect, the Preter-perfect, the Preter-plusquamperfect and the Future.

M. How many Persons are there?

S. Three; First, Second, Third.

A VERB is A part of Speech which signifies to be, to do, or to suffer. Or a Verb is that part of Speech which expresses what is affirmed or said of thing.

A Verb may be distinguished from any other Part of Speech these ways. 1. A Verb being the most necessary and essential Part of a Sentence without which it cannot subsist, whatever Word with a Substantive Noun makes full Sense, or a Sentence, is a Verb; and that which does not make full Sense with it, is not a Verb. 2. Whatever Word with HE or SHE or SHALL before it makes Sense, is a Verb; otherwise not.

I. In most Verbi there are two Forms or VOICES, the ACTIVE ending in *o*, and the PASSIVE in *or*. The former expresses what is done by the Nominative or Person before it: The latter what is suffered by, or done to the Nominative or Person before it; as *Amo*, I love; *Amor*, I am loved.

II. The Moods are divided into Finite and Infinite. The first three, the Indicative, Subjunctive and Imperative, are called FINITE, because they have certain fixt Terminations answering to certain Persons singular and plural. The last is called INFINITIVE or INFINITE, because it is not confined to one Number or Person more than another.

1. The INDICATIVE Mood affirms or denies positively; as, *Amo*, I love; *Non amo*, I do not love: Or else asks a Question; as, *An amas*? Dost thou love? *Annon amas*? Dost thou not love?

2. The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood generally depends upon another Verb in the same Sentence, either going before or coming after; as, *Si me amas*, præcepta mea serbare, If ye love me, keep my Commandments.

[This Mood is commonly branched out into three Moods, viz. The Optative, the Subjunctive more strictly taken, and the Potential.] 1. It is called PTATIVE, when a Word importing a Wish; as, Utinam, Would to God, O if, goes before it. 2. It is named SUBJUNCTIVE, when subjoined to some other Conjunction or Adverb, or to Interrogatives becoming Indefinites. (See Chap. IX.) 3. It is called POTENTIAL, when with simple Affirmation of the Verb is also signified some Modification or Affecting it, such as a Power, Possibility, Liberty, Duty, Will, &c. The Signs whereof in our Language are, May, Can, Might, Could, Would, Should and Be (for Would have or Should ave; as, They had repented, for would have). But because the Terminations of these Moods are the same, we have comprehended them all under one, viz. the Subjunctive, to which with small Diff.

## Part II. Chap. III. of Verb.

29

they may be reduced. Otherwise, if we will constitute as many Moods as there are various Modifications wherewith a Verb or Affirmation can be affected, we must multiply them to a far greater Number, and so we shall have Promissive, Hortative, Precative, Concessive, Mandative, Interrogative Mood; *s* may a Volitive and Debitive, which is commonly included in the Potential. As for the Optative, 'tis plain that the Wish is not in the Verb itself (which signifies only the Matter of it, or what is wished) but in the Verb Opto, which is understood, with ut, uti, or utinam, which really signify no more than That. And 'tis very probable that in like manner some Verb, or other word, may also be understood to what is called the Potential Mood, such as est, Res ita est, Fieri potest ut, &c. *et cetera*. Vossius, Sanctius, Perizonius, and others do contend; tho' Mr. Johnson is of another Opinion.]

3. The IMPERATIVE Mood commands, exhorts or intreats; as, *A. Love thou.*

4. The INFINITIVE Mood expresses the Signification of the Verb in general, and is Englished by TO; as, *Amare*, To love.

III. The TENSES are either Simple or Compound. The SIMPLE Tenses are the Present, the Preter-perfect and Future.

1. The PRESENT { Present.

2. The PRETER-PERFECT { Past.

3. The FUTURE { To come.

The COMPOUND Tenses are the Preter-imperfect, and the Preter-pluperf.

4. The PRETER-IMPERFECT refers to some past Time, and imports that the Thing was present and unfinished then; as, *Amabam*, I did love [i.e. then.]

5. The PRETER-PLUPERFECT refers to some past Time, and imports that the thing was past at or before that Time; as, *Scripsoram epistolam*, I had written a Letter, [i.e. before that Time.]

There is also a Compound Future Tense, called the FUTURE-PERFECT EXACT, which refers to some Time yet to come, and imports that as yet future shall be past and finished at or before that Time; as, *Cum cenavero tu leges*, When I shall have supped [i.e. after Supper] you all read. This Future is only in the Subjunctive Mood, and the Sign of is Shall have; as the other Future, called the FUTURE-IMPERFECT, is only in the Indicative, which, when joined with another Future, imports at two Things yet future shall be contemporaneous or exist at one Time; as, *Cum cenabo tu leges*, When I shall sup, [i.e. in Time of Supper] you all read.

[And not only the Tenses, but even the MOODS themselves may be divided into SIMPLE and COMPOUND. I call the Indicative a Simple Mood, because it simply affirms something of its Person or Nominative. But the other three Moods I call Compound, because they have some other Idea's or Modifications of our Thoughts superadded to the simple Signification of the Verb; as, a Command, a Desire, Prohibition, Possibility, Liberty, Will, Duty, Wish, Concession, Supposition, Condition, Purpose, &c. These Modifications are either really included in the Verb; as a Command, &c. in the Imperative, and according to Johnson, Power, Will, Duty, &c. in the Mood called Potential; or closely interwoven with it by the help of a Conjunction, Adverb or other Verb, exprest or understood: And because these also generally connote Time, they

## 30 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

they very frequently make all the Tenses of these Moods to become Compound Tenses. For, with respect to their Execution, they are generally future; but with respect to their Modal Signification, they may fall under any of the other Distinctions of Time as well as the Future. Thus, for Instance, *Lege*, *Read*, thou, with respect to its Execution, is future; but with respect to the Command, it is present. Again in *Legam*, I *may* or *can* read, the Action (if done at all) must be future, but the Liberty or Possibility are present; and so of others. Now, as it seems evident that from these Modifications of the Verb more than from the bare Execution of it, the Tenses of these Moods have at first been distinguished; so I am of Opinion, that had Grammarians taken these Measures accordingly, they had not rendered this Matter so intricate as they have done. For some of them, as *Santius*, &c. determining the Times of these Moods by the Execution only, have made the whole Imperative and Subjunctive of the future time, and the Infinitive and Particles of all Times, or rather of no Time: Others, viz. *Vossius*, *Linacer*, *Alvarus*, *Verepus*, &c. tho' they will not go so far as *Santius*, yet upon the same Grounds make *Utinam legam* the Future of the Optative; *Utinam legerem* the Present of it. By the same Rule, they make a Future of the Potential in RIM; as, *Citius crediderim*, I should or shall sooner believe: And another of the Subjunctive in ISSEM; as, *Juravit se illum statim interfectum*, *nisi jusjurandum sibi dedisset*; He would presently kill him, if he should not swear to him. Cic. But, with all imaginable Diference to these great Men, I humbly think that these Tenses may be more easily accounted for, if we consider them as Compound, i. e. respecting one Time as to their Execution, and another as to the various Modifications superadded to, or involved in their Signification. To instance in the two last Examples, (because they seem to have the greatest Difficulity) *Citius crediderim* seems to import these two Things, 1st, That I have and continue to have, a Reason why I should not believe it; which Reason is of the Imperfect or past Time. And 2dly, That I shall sooner have believed it, than another Thing, with respect to which it shall be past. For there are a great many Examples where the Preterite in RIM hath the same Signification with the Future Perfect in RO; as, *Si te inde exemerim*, Terent. for *exemero*. See *Voss. lib. v. cap. 15.* and *Aul. Gell. lib. xviii. cap. 2.* As to the other Example, the Composition of two Times is yet more evident; for tho' *jusjurandum dedisset* be posterior, and consequently future with respect to *Juravit*, yet it is prior, not only to the Time of the Relation, but to *interfectum*, to prevent which it behaved it necessarily to be past; and so of others. The same Rule in my Opinion will likewise hold in the Infinitive and Particles, which of themselves have always one fixed Time; and when they seem to be of another Time, that is not in them, but in the Verb that goes before them, or comes after them. Thus, for instance, *Scribere* is always present, or co-existent with the Verb before it; and *Scripsisse* is always prior to the same Verb, in all its Tenses; as, *Dicit*, *dixit*, or *dicet*; *juvat*, *juvit*, or *juvabit* Me scribere and Me scripsisse. So also the Particles have a fixt Time, present, past or future; and when any part of the Verb sum is joined with them, they retain their own Times, and have these of that Verb superadded to them. But because there are innumerable Occasions of Speaking, wherein the nice Distinctions of Times are not necessary, therefore it frequently happens that they are promiscuously used: As I could evince by a great many Examples, not only in the Passive, but Active Voice, both in the Latin and other Languages, if there were place for it. Which yet in my Judgment doth not hinder but that every part of a Verb hath formally and of its own Nature a certain Time simple or Compound, to which it is fixed and determined.)

IV. Then

V. There are two NUMBERS, the SINGULAR and the PLURAL, answering to the same Numbers of a Noun or Pronoun.

V. There are three PERSONS in each Number: The FIRST speaks of itself, the SECOND is spoken to, and the THIRD is spoken of. The First hath only EGO and NOS, the Second only TU and VOS, and the Third any Substantive NOUN Singular and Plural put before the respective Terminations of the Verb, answering to them through all Voices, Moods and Tenses.

[A Verb hath the same Respect to its Nominative that an Adjective hath to Substantive; and therefore, as an Adjective hath not properly either Person or Numbers, but certain Terminations fitted for those of its Substantive; so a Verb hath properly neither Persons nor Numbers, but certain Terminations answering to the Persons and Numbers of its Nominative.]

NOTE, 1. That Ego and Tu are seldom express, because the Terminations of the Verb immediately discover them, without any hazard of a Mistake.

NOTE, 2. That if a Substantive Noun be joined with Ego, or Tu, it is the Verb of the Person of these Pronouns, not of the Noun.

NOTE, 3. That in the Continuation of a Discourse, the third Person is also frequently understood, because easily known by what went before; and these Pronouns, Ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, idem, quis and qui, do often supply the place of it.

### The ENGLISH SIGNS of the TENSES are,

{ A&t. The Theme of the Verb, and est, eth, or ss; or for the greater Emphasis, do, doft, doth, or does before it.

{ Paff. am, art, is, are, beest, with a Word in ed, en, t, &c.

{ A&t. ed, edit, &c. or for the greater Emphasis, did, diſt, before it.

{ Paff. was, waſt, were, weri, with a Word in ed, en, &c.

{ A&t. have, haf, bath, or has, with a Word in ed, en, &c. or as the Imp.

{ Paff. have been, haſbeen, bath or has been, with a Word in ed, en, &c.

{ A&t. had, badt, with a Word in ed, en, &c.

{ Paff. had been, hadt been, with a Word in ed, en, &c.

{ A&t. shall, will, shalt, will, with the Verb.

{ Paff. shall be, will be, shalt be, will be, with a Word in ed, en, &c.

The Subjunctive Mood Active has frequently these Signs,

present, may or can.

perfect, might, could, would, should.

perfect. may have, or might have, could have, would have, should have.

perfect. might have, could have, would have, should have or had.

future, shall have.

The Passive has frequently the same Signs with be, or been.

### De Conjugationibus.

Q. Uot sunt Conjugationes?

D. Quatuor; Prima, Secunda, Tertia & Quarta.

M. Quae sunt Notæ harum Conjugationum?

### Of Conjugations.

M. How many Conjugations are there?

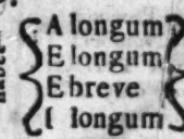
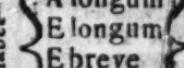
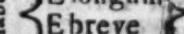
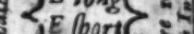
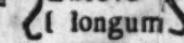
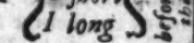
S. Four; First, Second, Third and Fourth.

M. What are the Marks of these Conjugations?

D. Prima

## 32 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

D.

Prima		First	
Secunda		Second	
Tertia		Third	
Quarta		Fourth	

S.

The common Characteristic or MARK by which these Conjugations distinguished from one another, is one of these three Vowels, A, E, I, before the RE of the Infinitive Active, tho' they may also be known by the same Vowels in several other Parts of them; for A long is most frequent in First, E long in the Second, E or I short in the Third, and I long in Fourth: Only E before *bam*, *bas*, *bat*, &c. and before *mus* and *tis*; *mur* and *mini*, is always long in whatever Conjugation it is found.

But it is to be observed that the *Preterites* and *Supines*, and all the Parts formed from them (because of the great Irregularity of their middle Syllab and constant Agreement in their last Vowel, and in the Terminations arising from it, in all Conjugations) cannot properly be said to be of any one Conjugation more than another; for there is nothing, for Example, in *Fricui*, *cui*, *Elicui*, *Amicui*, or in *Fricatum*, *Doctum*, *Elicitum*, *amicitum*, or in Parts that come from them, whereby to distinguish their Conjugations.

### Prima Conjugatio. The First Conjugation

A M O.

Vox Activa.

Principia Partes.

*Præf. Indic.*      *Perfict.*

Am-o,      am-avi,

*INDICATIVUS Modus.*

*Præfens.*

*Sing.*      

Am-o,  
Am-as,  
Am-at:

*Plur.*      

Am-amus,  
Am-atis,  
Am-ant.

*Imperfectum:*

*Sing.*      

Am-abam,  
Am-abas,  
Am-abat:

*Plur.*      

Am-abamus,  
Am-abatis,  
Am-abant.

To Love.

The Active Voice.

The Principal Parts.

*Sup.*      *Præf. Infin.*

am-atum,      am-are.

*The INDICATIVE Mo-*

*The Present.*

1 *I* Love, or do love,

2 *Thou* lovest, or dost love,

3 *He* loveth, or doth love,

1 *We* love, or do love,

2 *Te* (or you) love, or do love,

3 *They* love, or do love.

*The Imperf.*

1 *I* loved, or did love,

2 *Thou* lovedst, or didst love,

3 *He* loved, or did love;

1 *We* loved, or did love,

2 *Te* loved, or did love,

3 *They* loved, or did love.

## Part II. Chap. III. of Verb.

33

### Perfectum.

- |                                   |                    |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1 Am-avi,                         | 1 I have loved, +  |
| 2 Am-avisti,                      | 2 Thou hast loved, |
| 3 Am-avit:                        | 3 He hath loved;   |
| 1 Am-avimus,                      | 4 We have loved,   |
| 2 Am-avistis,                     | 2 Ye have loved,   |
| 3 Am-averunt, <i>vel averere.</i> | 3 They have loved. |

### The Perfect.

### Plusquamperfectum.

- |                |                     |
|----------------|---------------------|
| 1 Am-averam,   | 1 I had loved,      |
| 2 Am-averas,   | 2 Thou hadst loved, |
| 3 Am-averat:   | 3 He had loved;     |
| 1 Am-averamus, | 4 We had loved,     |
| 2 Am-averatis, | 2 Ye had loved,     |
| 3 Am-averant.  | 3 They had loved.   |

### The Plu-perfect.

### Futurum.

- |              |                            |
|--------------|----------------------------|
| 1 Am-abo,    | 1 I shall or will love,    |
| 2 Am-abis,   | 2 Thou shalt or wilt love, |
| 3 Am-abit:   | 3 He shall or will love;   |
| 1 Am-abimus, | 4 We shall or will love,   |
| 2 Am-abitis, | 2 Ye shall or will love,   |
| 3 Am-abunt.  | 3 They shall or will love. |

### The Future.

## FUNCTIVUS. The SUBJUNCTIVE Moods.

### Præsent.

- |            |                             |
|------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 Am-em,   | 1 I may or can love,        |
| 2 Am-es,   | 2 Thou mayst or canst love, |
| 3 Am-et:   | 3 He may or can love;       |
| 1 Am-emuſ, | 4 We may or can love,       |
| 2 Am-etiſ, | 2 Ye may or can love,       |
| 3 Am-ent.  | 3 They may or can love.     |

### The Present.

### Imperfectum.

- |              |   |
|--------------|---|
| 1 Am-arem,   | 1 I might, could, would or should       |
| 2 Am-ares,   | 2 Thou mightest, couldst, wouldest, &c. |
| 3 Am-aret:   | 3 He might, could, would or should      |
| 1 Am-aremuſ, | 4 We might, could, would or should      |
| 2 Am-aretiſ, | 2 Ye might, could, would or should      |
| 3 Am-arent.  | 3 They might, could, would or should    |

### The Imperfect.

I loved, or did love; Thou lovest, or didst love, &c. as in the Imperf.

## 34 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

### Perfectum.

### The Perfect.

Sing.	{ 1 Am-averim,	1 I may have loved,
	{ 2 Am-averis,	2 Thou may'st have loved,
	{ 3 Am-averit:	3 He may have loved:
Plur.	{ 1 Am-averimus,	1 We may have loved,
	{ 2 Am-averitis,	2 Ye may have loved,
	{ 3 Am-averint.	3 They may have loved.

### Plusquamperfectum.

### The Plu.-perfect.

Sing.	{ 1 Am-avissim,	1 I might, could, would, &c. have or
	{ 2 Am-avisses,	2 Thou mightest, couldst, &c. have or
	{ 3 Am-avisset:	3 He might, could, &c. have or
Plur.	{ 1 Am-avissimus,	1 We might, could, &c. have or
	{ 2 Am-avissetis,	2 Ye might, could, &c. have or
	{ 3 Am-avissent.	3 They might, could, &c. have or

### Futurum.

### The Future.

Sing.	{ 1 Am-avero,	1 I shall have loved,
	{ 2 Am-averis,	2 Thou shalt have loved,
	{ 3 Am-averit:	3 He shall have loved:
Plur.	{ 1 Am-averimus,	1 We shall have loved,
	{ 2 Am-averitis,	2 Ye shall have loved,
	{ 3 Am-averint.	3 They shall have loved.

## IMPERATIVUS Modus. The IMPERATIVE Mood.

### Praesens.

### The Present.

Sing.	{ 2 Am-a vel am-ato,	2 Love thou or do thou love.
	{ 3 Am-ato:	3 Let him love:
Plur.	{ 2 Am-ate vel am-atote,	2 Love ye or do ye love.
	{ 3 Am-anto.	3 Let them love.

## INFINITIVUS Modus. The INFINITIVE Mood.

### Præf. Am-are.

### Pres. To love.

### Perf. Am-avisse.

### Perf. To have or had loved.

### Fut. Am-aturum

{ effe vel  
suific.

### Fut. To be about to love.

## PARTICIPIA.

### The PARTICIPLES.

### Præf. Am-ans.

### Of the Present, Loving.

### Fut. Am-aturus, -a, -um.

### Of the Future, About to love.

## GERUNDIA.

### The GERUNDS.

### Nom. Am-andum.

### Nom. Loving.

### Gen. Am-andi.

### Gen. Of loving.

Dat. Am-ando.

Dat. To loving.

Acc. Am-andum.

Acc. Loving.

Abl. Am-ando.

Abl. From, in or by loving.

S U P I N A.

rius, Am atum.

The SUPINES.

osterius, Am-atu.

First, To love.

Last, To love, or to be loved.

VOX PASSIVA.

The Passive Voice.

Amor, amatus, amari.

INDICATIVUS Modus. The INDICATIVE Mood.

Præsens.

The Present.

Am-or,  
Am-aris vel am-are,  
Am-atur:  
Am-amur,  
Am-amini,  
Am-antur.

I am loved,  
Thou art loved,  
He is loved:  
We are loved,  
Te are loved,  
They are loved.

Imperfectum.

The Imperfect.

Am-abar,  
Am-abaris vel -abare,  
Am-abatur:  
Am-abamur,  
Am-abamini,  
Am-abantur.

I was  
Thou wast [wert]  
He was  
We were  
Te were  
They were

loved.

Perfectum.

The Perfect.

Am-atus  
Am-ati

I have been  
Thou hast been  
He hath been  
We have been  
Te have been  
They have been

loved.

Plusquamperfectum.

The Plu.-perfect.

Am-atus  
Am-ati

I had been  
Thou hadst been  
He had been  
We had been  
Te had been  
They had been

loved.

Futurum.

The Future.

Am-abor,  
Am-aberis vel -abere,  
Am-abitur:

I shall or will be  
Thou shalt or will be  
He shall or will be

Plur.

C 2

## 36 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

**Plur.** { 1 Am-abimur,  
2 Am-ahimini,  
3 Am-abuntur.

### SUBJUNCTIVUS Modus.

#### Præsens.

**Sing.** { 1 Am-er,  
2 Am-eris vel -ere,  
3 Am-etur:  
  
**Plur.** { 1 Am-emur,  
2 Am-emini,  
3 Am-entur.

#### Imperfektum.

**Sing.** { 1 Am-arer,  
2 Am-ateris vel -arere,  
3 Am-aretur:  
  
**Plur.** { 1 Am aremur,  
2 Am aremini,  
3 Am-arentur.

#### Perfektum.

**Sing.** { Am-atus { 1 sum vel fuerim,  
2 sis vel fueris,  
3 sit vel fuerit:  
  
**Plur.** { Am-ati { 1 sum us vel fuerimus,  
2 sitis vel fueritis,  
3 sint vel fuerint.

#### Plusquamperfektum.

**Sing.** { Am-agus { 1 esset vel fuisset,  
2 esces vel fuisses,  
3 esset vel fuisset:  
  
**Plur.** { Am-ati { 1 essemus vel fuissetis,  
2 essetis vel fuissetis,  
3 essent vel fuissent.

#### Futurum.

**Sing.** { Am-atus { 1 fuerò,  
2 fueris,  
3 fuerit:  
  
**Plur.** { Am-ati { 1 fuerimus,  
2 fueritis,  
3 fuerint.

### IMPERATIVUS Modus.

#### Præsens.

**Sing.** { 2 Am-are vel am-ator,  
3 Am-ator:

1 We shall or will be  
2 Te shall or will be { loved.  
3 They shall or will be {

### The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

#### The Present.

1 I may or can be  
2 Thou mayst or canst be {  
3 He may or can be { loved.  
1 We may or can be {  
2 Te may or can be { perfect.  
3 They may or can be { tur.

#### The Imperfect.

1 I might, could, would, &c.  
2 Thou mightest, couldst, &c.  
3 He might, could, &c.  
1 We might, could, &c.  
2 Te might, could, &c.  
3 They might, could, &c.

#### The Perfect.

1 I may have been  
2 Thou mayst have been {  
3 He may have been { loved.  
1 We may have been {  
2 Te may have been {  
3 They may have been.

#### The Plusperfect.

1 I might, could, &c. have or  
2 Thou mightest, &c. have or  
3 He might, &c. have or  
1 We might, &c. have or  
2 Te might, &c. have or  
3 They might, &c. have or

#### The Future.

1 I shall have been  
2 Thou shalt have been {  
3 He shall have been { loved.  
1 We shall have been {  
2 Te shall have been {  
3 They shall have been {

### The IMPERATIVE Mood.

#### The Present.

2 Be thou loved,  
3 Let him be loved!

loved. § 2 Am-amin, 2 Be ye loved.  
§ 3 Am-antor. 3 Let them be loved.

Mood INFINITIVUS Modus. The INFINITIVE Mood.

af. Am-ari. To be loved.

rf. Am-atum esse vel fuisse. To have or had been loved.

t. Am-atum iri. To be about to be loved.

## PARTICPIA.

## The PARTICIPLES.

Perfecti temporis, Am-atus, -a, -um. Of the Perfect, Loved.  
turi, Am-andus, -a, -um. Of the Fut. To be loved.

## Secunda Conjugatio.

## VOX ACTIVA.

Doceo, docui, doctum, docere.

## INDICATIVUS.

Sing.

Plur.

D	o	c	e	o	,	~	2	~	3	~	4	1	2	3
o	ce	b	a	m	,	-et;	-emus,	-etis,	-ent.					
c	e	b	a	m	,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.				
e	u	i	f	i	,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uimus,	-uiftis,	{ -uerunt,				
u	e	r	s	a	,	-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat;	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.			
r	e	b	o	,	,	-ebis,	-ebit;	-ebimus,	-ebitis,	-ebunt.				

## SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Doc-eam,	-eas,	-eat;	-eamus,	-eatis,	-eant.
Doc-erem,	-eres,	-eret;	-eremus,	-eretis,	-erent.
Doc-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
Doc-uifsem,	-uifses,	-uifset;	-uifsemus,	-uifsetis,	-uifsent.
Doc-uerio,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

## IMPERATIVUS.

1. Doc-	{ -e, -eto;	{ -ete, -etote;

FINITIVUS.		SUPINA.	PARTICPIA.	GERUNDIA.
1. Doc-ere.		1. Doc-tum.	Pr. Doc-ens.	Doc-endum.
2. Doc-uiffe.		2. Doc-tu.	Fu. Doc-turus.	Doc-endi.
Doc-turum esse vel fuisse.				Doc-endo.

## VOX PASSIVA.

Doceor, doctus, doceri.

INDICATIVUS.

Sing.

Plur.

Pr. Doc-eor, { -eris, -etur; -emur, -emini, -entur.  
-ere,Im. Doc-ebar, { -ebaris, -ebatur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.  
-ebare,Fut. Doc-ebor, { -eberis, -ebitur; -ebimur, -ebimini, -ebuntur.  
-ebere,

## SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Doo-ear, { -earis, -eatur; -eamur, -eamini, -eantur.  
-eare,Im. Doc-eer, { -erens, -eretur; -eremur, -eremini, -erentur.  
-erere,

## IMPERATIVUS.

Præf. Doc- { -ere, -etor; -emini -entor.  
-etor,

## INFINITIVUS.

Præf. Doc-eri.

Perf. Doc-tum esse vel suisse.

Fut. Doc-tum iri.

## PARTICIPIA.

Per. Doc-tus, -a, -um

Fut. Doc-endus, -a, -um

## Tertia Conjugatio.

## VOX ACTIVA.

Lego, legi, lectum, legere.

INDICATIVUS.

Sing.

Plur.

Præf. L 1 2 3 I 2 3  
Eg o, -is, -it; -imus, -itis, -unt.

Imp. Leg-am,-bam,-ebas,-ebat; -ebamus, ebatis,-ebant;

Perf. Leg-i, -isti, -it; -imus, -istis, -erunt;

Plus. Leg-eram, -eras, -erat; -eramus, -eratis, erant.

Fut. Leg-am, -es, -et; -emus, -etis, -ent.

## SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præf. Leg-am, -as, -at; -amus, -atis, -ant.

Imp. Leg-erem, -eres, -eret; -eremus, -eretis, -erent.

Perf.

perf. Leg-erim, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.  
 pl. Leg-issem, -issem, -isset; -issemus, -issetis, -issent.  
 fut. Leg-ero, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.

## IMPERATIVUS.

pres. Leg. { -e, -ito; { -ite, -unto.

INFINITIVUS.	SUPINA.	PARTICIPIA.	GERUNDIA.
pres. Leg-ere.	1. Lec-tum.	Pr. Leg-ens.	Leg-endum.
perf. Leg-isse.	2. Lec-tu.	Fut. Lec-turus.	Leg-endi.
fut. Lec-turum.	esse vel fuisse.		Leg-endo.

## VOX PASSIVA.

Legor, lectus, legi.

## INDICATIVUS.

Sing. Plur.

pres. Leg-or,	{ -eris, -itur; -imur, -imini, -untur. { -ere, -ebantur.	
imp. Leg-ebar,	{ -ebamis, -ebatur; -ebamus, -ebamini, -ebantur. { -ebare, -ebantur.	
fut. Leg-ar,	{ -eris, -etur; -emur, -emini, -entur. { -ere, -erentur.	

## SUBJUNCTIVUS.

pres. Leg-ar,	{ -aris, -atur; -amur, -amini, -antur. { -are, -erentur.	
imp. Leg-erer,	{ -erentis, -eretur; -eremur, -eremini, -erentur. { -erent, -erentur.	

## IMPERATIVUS.

pres. Leg- { -e, -itor; -imini, -untor.

## INFINITIVUS.

pres. Leg-i.	Perf. Lec-tus, -a, -um.
perf. Lec-tum esse vel fuisse.	Fut. Leg-endus, -a, -um.
fut. Lec-tum iri.	

40 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

Quarta Conjugatio.

V O X A C T I V A.

**A**udio, audivi, auditum, audire,  
I N D I C A T I V U S.

Sing.

Plur.

Pr. **A**Ud-io, -is, -it; -imus, -itis, -iunt.

Im. Aud-iebam, -iebas, -iebat; -iebamus, -iebatis, -iebant.

Pe. Aud-ivi, -ivisti, -ivit; -ivimus, -ivistis, -iveru-

Pl. Aud-iveram, iveras, iverat; -iveramus, -iveratis, -iveran-

Fu. Aud-iam, -ies, -iet; -iemus, -ietis, -ient.

S U B J U N C T I V U S.

Pr. Aud-iam, -ias, -iat; -iamus, -iatis, -iant.

Im. Aud-irem, -ires, -iret; -iremus, -iretis, -irent.

Pe. Aud-iverim, -iveris, -iverit; -iverimus, -iveritis, -iveriu-

Pl. Aud-ivissem, ivisses, ivisset; -ivissemus, -ivissetis, -ivissen-

Fu. Aud-ivero, -iveris, -iverit; -iverimus, -iveritis, -ivetin-

I M P E R A T I V U S.

Pr. Aud. **i**, -ito; **ite**, -ite;

**INFINITIVUS.** **SUPINA.** **PARTICPIA.** **GERUNDIUM.**

Pr. Aud-ire. 1. Aud-itum. Pr. Aud-iens. Aud-iendu-

Pe. Aud-ivisse. 2. Aud-itu. Fu. Aud-iturus. Aud-iendi-

Fu. Aud-iturum  
esse vel fuisse.

V O X P A S S I V A.

tor, auditus, audiri.

I N D I C A T I V U S.

Sing.

Plur.

Pr. Aud-ior, [*iris*, -ire, -itur; -imur, -imini, -iuntur.

Im. Aud-iebar, [*iebaris*, -iebare, -iebatur; -iebamur, -iebamini iebantur.

Fu. Aud-iar, [*ieris*, -iere, -ietur; -iemur, -iemini, -ientur.

S U B J U N C T I V U S.

Pr. Aud-iar, [*iaris*, -iare, -iatur; -iamur, -iamini, -iantur.

Im. Aud-irer, [*ieris*, -iere, -iretur; -iremur, -iremini, -irentur.

## Part II. Chap. III. of Verb.

41

### I M P E R A T I V U S.

Praf.	Aud.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{-ire,} \\ \text{-itor,} \end{array} \right.$	-itor;	jimi, -iuntor,	
-------	------	--	--------	----------------	--

### I N F I N I T I V U S.

Praf.	Aud.-iri.			P A R T I C I P I A .
	Perf.	Aud.-item esse vel fuisse.		Perf. Aud-itus, -a, -um,
	Fut.	Aud-itum iri.		Fut. Aud-iendus, -a, -uni.

Note, That in the Examples of the Second, Third and Fourth Conjugations, we have omitted such Parts of the Passive Voice as are supplied by the Participle-perfect with the Verb Sum, viz. the Perfect and Plu. perfect of the Indicative, and the Perfect, Plu. perfect and Future of the Subjunctive, as being the same in all Conjugations with the Example of the First, the Change of the Participle only excepted: But it is carefully to be observed, that the Participle being an Adjective, must agree in Gender, Number and Case with its Substantive, or (which is the same thing) with the Person before it.

. R E M A R K S shewing when a L A T I N Verb is to be rendered otherwise in E N G L I S H than in the foregoing Example.

**W**HEN the Continuation of a thing is signified, the English Verb may be varied in all its Tenses by the Participle in ING, with the Verb

AM: 45.

Praf. I am reading,	for	I read
Imp. I was reading,		I did
Perf. I have been reading,		I have read.
Plu. I had been reading,		I had read.
Fut. I shall be reading,	I shall read.	

So likewise in the Passive Voice, The House is building, Domus aedificatur. The Lesson was prescribing, Lectio prescribatur. Sometimes x is set before the Participle; as, While the House is a building, It is a doing, He is a dying.

2. When a Question is asked, the Nominate Case or Person is set after the Verb, or the Sign of the Verb; as, Love I? Do I love? Can I love? Should be beloved?

3. We have made THOU the second Person Singular, to distinguish it from the Plural. But it is customary with us, (as also with the French and others) tho' we speak but to one particular Person, to use the Plural YOU; and never THOU, but when we address our selves to Almighty God, or otherwise when we signify Familiarity, Disdain or Contempt.

4. The

## 42 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

4. The Perfect of the Indicative is often Englished as the Imperfect; as, *Nunquam amavi hunc hominem*, I never loved [or did love] this Man. See Train of Examples in Ovid. Metamorph. lib. 1. from v. 21 to 39.

5. The PERFECT Tense is frequently Englished by HAD after *Antrum*, *Potquam*, *Ubi* or *Ut* for *Potquam*; as, *Potquam superavimus Isthmum*. After we had [were] pass'd over the Isthmus, Ovid. *Hoc ubi dicto dedit*. When he had spoken these Words, Liu. *Ut me salutavit, statim Romanus profectus est*, After he had saluted me, &c. Cic.

6. We have chosen MAY, CAN, MIGHT, COULD, &c. for the English of the SUBJUNCTIVE Mood, because these are the most frequent Signs of it, and distinguish it best from other Moods; but very often it is the same with the Indicative, save only that it hath some Conjunction or Infinite Word before it; such as, *If*, *Seeing*, *Lest*, *That*, *Although*, *I wish*, &c. as, *Si amem*, If I love; *Ne amem*, Lest I love; *Causa est cur amem*, It is the Cause why I love, Ovid. And frequently it hath both's at, *Oro ut amo*, I intreat that you may love, *Idem*.

7. The PRESENT of the Subjunctive, after *Quasi*, *Tanquam*, and the like is sometimes Englished as the Imperfect; as, *Quasi intelligant quas sit*, As if they understood what kind of Person he is, Cic.

8. When a Question is asked, the Present of the Subjunctive is frequently Englished by SHALL or SHOULD; as, *Eloquar an fileam?* Shall I speak or be silent? Virg. *Singula quid referam?* Why should I mention every thing? Ovid. Likewise after *Non est quod*; as, *Non est (supple causa) quae eas*, There is no Reason why you should go, or you need not go. Sometimes it is Englished by WOULD; as, *In facinus jurasse putes*, You would think they had sworn to [commit] Wickedness, Ovid.

9. We have Englished the PERFECT of the Subjunctive in RIM by MAY HAVE; as, *Ne frustra bi tales viri venerint*, That such Men as these may not have come in vain, Cic. *Forsitan audieris*, You may perhaps have heard it; to distinguish it from the Present and Pluperfet, by the Sign of which it is also most frequently Englished; as, *Ut sic dixerim*, That I may so speak. *Ubi ego audiverim?* Where should I have heard it? *Unus tantus fruges caiderit?* Could one Man make so great a Slaughter? Virg. *Fortasse erravim*, Perhaps I might be in an Error, Plin. *Oratores quos vim peritissimi*, The ablest Orators I have seen, [or could see.] Quintil.

10. This Perfect in RIM sometimes inclines very much to a future Signification, and then it is Englished by SHOULD, WOULD, COULD, CAN, WILL, SHALL; as, *Citius crediderim*, I should sooner believe, Juv. *Im benter audierim*, I would gladly hear, Cic. *Ciceronem cuicunque eorum fac opposuerim*, I could easily match Cicero with any of them, Quintil. *Non sile dixerim*, I cannot well tell, Cic. *Nec tamen excluserim alios*, And yet I will not exclude others, Plin. *Si paululum modo quid te fugerit ego perire*, If you but trip in the least, I shall be undone, Ter. But all those ways speaking, tho' indeed they respect the Future as to the Execution, yet they seem also to look a little beyond it, to a Time when their Futurity shall pass; and so come near in Signification to the Future in RO.

11. The Perfect of the Subjunctive after *Quasi*, *Tanquam*, and the like, is sometimes Englished by HAD; as, *Quasi affuerim*, As if I had been present, Plaut. *Perinde ac si jam victor*, As if they had already overcome, Ovid.

12. The PLUPERFECT in ISSE M is sometimes Englished by SHOULD; as, *Imperaret quod vellet, quodcumque imperavit, se esse factum*. He might command what he pleased, whatever he commanded [should be]

[and] they would do, *Ces. Fædus iustum est his legibus, ut cuius populi cives  
ceramini vicissent, si alteri imperaret.* An Agreement was made on these  
terms, that that People whose Countrymen should be victorious in that Com-  
bat, should have the Sovereignty over the other, *Liv.* And this happens  
when a Thing is signified as future at a certain past time referred to; and com-  
monly takes place, when what was formerly said directly, is afterwards recited  
directly; as, *No dubita, dabitur quocunque optaris.* Doubt not, whatsoever  
you shall choose shall be given thee, *Ovid.* *Sol Phæthoni factum se esse  
icit, quicquid optasset.* The Sun told Phæthon that he would do whatsoever  
he should choose, *Cic.* Where it is worth noticing, That what was the Future  
in the Subjunctive in the direct Speech, becomes the Plu-perfect in the indi-  
rect Recital of it. See Turner's Exercises, p. 21, &c. But as we have said p.  
. the Plu-perfect, notwithstanding its coming in the Place of a Future, still  
ains its own proper compound Time, that is, it was prior to a thing now  
at the Time of the Recital by Cicero, tho' it was future when first spokēn  
the Sun. And therefore there is no Reason for making this Termination  
in a Future Tense, as Mr. Turner does.

3. Tho' the proper English of the FUTURE in RO be SHALL HAVE,  
generally the HAVE or the SHALL, and frequently both, are omitted;  
*Qui Antonium opprimit, is bellum consecerit.* He who shall cut off Antony,  
all put an End to the War, *Cic.* *Haud definitum donec perfecero hoc,* I will  
give over till I have effected this, *Ter.* *Si negaverit,* If he denies it, *Cic;*  
sometimes it is Englished by WILL; as, *Dixerit fortasse aliquis,* Some body  
will perhaps say, *Cic.* *Aut consolando, aut consilio, aut re iuvero,* I will assist  
you either by comforting you, or with Counsel, or with Money, *Idem.* But  
we thus render the Future in RO in our Language, and tho' (which is  
more material) very frequently it and the Future of the Indicative are used  
miscoually, yet I cannot be perswaded that in any Instance the formal Si-  
gnifications of these are the same, as Mr. Johnson contends, p. 339. but still  
I speak with the great *Vossius*, that the Future in RO is always a Future Perfect,  
that is, that there is a Time insinuated when a thing yet future shall be finish-  
ed or past; and that even when a Future of the Indicative is joined with it,  
which in order of time should be done before it; as, *Pergratum mibi feceris, si  
mutabis,* You shall have done [shall do] me a great Favour, if you shall dis-  
charge, *Cic.* For what hinders that we may not faintly hint at the Finishing of  
Action yet future, without formally considering the Finishing of another A-  
ction on which it depends; and on the contrary? But if the promiscuous Usage  
of these one for another be sufficient to make them formally the same, then  
shall confound all Tenses, and overthrow the very Arguments Mr. Johnson  
takes up against *Santius*, with respect to the Tenses of the Infinitive.

4. The TO of the INFINITIVE is generally omitted after *May*, *Can*,  
*ght*, *Would*, *Could*, (which are sometimes Verbs themselves, and not the  
Signs of them;) also after *Must*, *Bid*, *Dare*, *Let*, *Help* and *Make*.

5. But what is most to be regarded in the Infinitive is, that when it hath  
Accusative before it, it is commonly Englished as the Indicative Mood,  
Particle THAT being sometimes put before it, but often understood.  
And it is carefully to be remarked, that the same Tenses of the Infinitive are  
commonly Englished, according as the preceeding Verb varies its Tenses; as  
appear in the following Scheme.

{ <i>Dicit me scribere,</i>	He says [that] I write.
{ <i>Dixit me scribere,</i>	He said [that] I was writing.
{ <i>Dicet me scribere,</i>	He shall say [that] I am writing.

Dicit

## 44 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

Dicit me scripsiſſe,	He says [that] I wrote, or did write.
Dixit me scriptiſſe,	He said [that] I had written.
Dicet me scriptiſſe;	He shall say [that] I have written, or did write.
Dicit me scripturum [eſſe],	He says [that] I will write.
Dixit me scripturum [eſſe],	He said [that] I would write.
Dicet me scripturum [juſſe],	He says [that] I would have written.
Dixit me scripturum [juſſe],	He said [that] I would have written.
Dicet me scripturum [juſſe],	He shall say [that] I would have written.

It will be of great Use to accustom the Learner to render the Infinitive after this manner, both in English and Latin, especially after he has been taught something of Construction: And then to cause him vary the Accusative *Mi* into *Te, se, illum, hominem, feminam, &c.* and these again into the Plural, *Nos, vos, se, illos, homines, feminas, &c.* But he must be careful to make the Participles agree with them in Gender, Number and Case.

NOTE, 1. That when the preceding Verb is of the Present or Future Tense, the Fut. of the Infinit. with *eſſe*, is rendered by SHALL or WILL; and when it is of the Perfect Tense, the Fut. of the Infinit. is rendered by WOULD, as in the Examples above; and sometimes by SHOULD; as, *Dixi te sciturum eſſe*, I said that you should know.

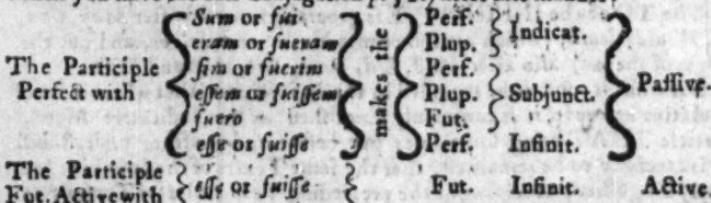
NOTE, 2. That when the preceding Verb is of the Imperfect or Pluperfect Tenses, the English of the Infinitive is the same as when it is of the Perfect.

16. The Perfect of the Indicative and Subjunctive Passive, made up with *SUM* or *SIM*, are Englished by AM, ART, IS, ARE, instead of HAVE BEEN, when the Thing is signified to be just now past; as, *Vulneratus sum*, I am wounded; *Opus finitum est*, The Work is finished; *Cum tempora mutata sint*, Since the Times are changed.

17. When it is made up by *fui*, it is frequently Englished by WAS/WAST WERE, WERT; as, *Roma fuit capta*, Rome was taken: As is also what is called the Plu-perfect, with *eram* and *essem*; as, *Labor finitus erat*, The Labour was finished; *Si labor finitus esset*, If the Labour were finished.

## II. REMARKS on the LATIN Conjugations,

1. A Great Part of the Passive Voice, and some of the Active, is made up of two of its own Participles and the Auxiliary Verb *SUM* (of which you have the full Conjugation p. 52.) after this manner:



2. Having p. 3 o. laid it down as a probable Opinion, that every Part of a Verb, with all its Participles, have a certain fixt Time simple or compound, which they formally and of their own Nature signify; it will perhaps be here expected that I should account for that great Variety that is found in

the

the Passive Voice. To put this Matter in the clearest Light I am able, I must premit another Division of the Tenses, viz. into PASSING and PAST; or into such as import the Continuance of an Action or Thing, without regard to the Ending or Finishing of it; and such as import that the thing is finished (or to be finished) and done. Of the first sort are the Present, Imperfect and Future Imperfect; of the second sort are the Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect. See Page 29. From this Division of the Tenses, together with what we have formerly said, we are furnished with an easy Method of distinguishing all the Parts of the Passive. Thus, for instance, let the Subject of Discourse be the Building of an House. 1. When I say *Domus significatur*, I mean that it is just now a building, but not finished. 2. When *Edificabitur*, that it was then, or at a certain past Time, a building, but not then finished. 3. *Edificabatur*, that some Time hence it shall be a building, without any formal Regard to the Finishing of it. But when I make use of the Participle Perfect, I always signify a Thing compleated and ended; but with their Subdistinctions. 1. *Edificata est*; I mean simply, that it is finished, without any Regard to the Time when. 2. *Edificata fuit*; it is finished, and some Time since intervened. 3. *Edificata erat*; it was finished at a certain past Time referred to, with which it was contemporary. *Edificata fuerat*; it was finished before a certain Time past referred to, which it was prior. 4. *Edificata erit*; it shall be finished some Time hereafter, either without Regard to a particular Time when, or with Respect to a certain Time yet future, with which its finishing shall be contemporary. And lastly, *Edificata fuerit*; it shall be finished and past before another thing yet future, to which its Finishing shall be prior. And thus we have one different Times or Complications of Times, without confounding them with one another. But then how comes it to pass that these are so frequently used promiscuously? I answer, That this proceeds from one or more of these four Reasons. 1. Because it very frequently happens in Discourse that we have no Occasion particularly to consider these various Relations and Complications of Times; and 'tis the same thing to our Purpose whether the thing is or was done, or a doing; or whether it was done just now, or some Time ago; or whether another Thing was (or shall be) contemporaneous thereto, or prior to it: And the Matter being thus, we reckon our selves at Liberty to take several Parts of the Verb at random, as being secure not only of being understood, but also that in these Circumstances whatever we pitch on, when examined by the Rules above, shall be found literally true. 2. It is usual with us to state our selves as present with, and as it were Eyeswitnesses of the Things we relate, tho' really they were transacted long before; whence 'tis that we frequently use the Present instead of some past Time. 'Tis to be remarked that there are some Verbs, the Action whereof is in the Sense finished when begun; in which Case it will sometimes be all one whether we use the Passing or Past Tenses. And 4. The Present Tense (which truly speaking is gone before we pronounce it) is generally taken in a larger signification, and sometimes used for the Future, when we signify that the execution is very near, or (according to *Perizonius*) when together with the action we take in, also the Preparation to it. The Brevity we are constrain'd will not allow us to illustrate these Things with Examples. But by them we may account for the promiscuous Usage of the Tenses, in both Sciences; and what cannot be reduced to these, seems to be an Abuse of Language, and being very rarely to be met with, and perhaps only among the Poets, ought not to be made a common Standard. I shall only

## 46 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

ly add for a Proof that these Tenses are not always to be used indifferent that when we signify a thing to be just now finished, we cannot use *Fuerim*, or *fuisse*, but *Sum*, *sum* and *esse*.

3. Whether the Learner should be obliged to get by Heart these Parts the Passive that are supplied by SUM, or if they should be referred to Construction (to which they seem more naturally to belong) I leave to the Discretion of the Master, and therefore have put them in a smaller Character.

4. Besides these Parts which are thus made up, all the other Parts may be resolved into its own Particles and the Verb *Sum*, tho' their Signification are not precisely the same; as,

<i>Ano,</i>	<i>amabam,</i>	<i>amavi,</i>	<i>amaveram,</i>	<i>amabo.</i>
<i>Sum amans,</i>	<i>eram amans,</i>	<i>fui amans,</i>	<i>fueram amans,</i>	<i>ero amans,</i>
				<i>sum amatus,</i>

<i>Amor,</i>	<i>amabar,</i>	<i>amabor,</i>	<i>amer,</i>	<i>amarer.</i>
<i>Sum amatus,</i>	<i>eram amatus,</i>	<i>ero amatus,</i>	<i>amatus sum,</i>	<i>amatus esset</i>

5. The Participle in RUS with the Verb SUM is frequently used instead of the Future of the Indicative, especially if Purpose or Intention is signified as, *Profecturus sum*, or *Proficisci car*, I will go, or I am to go; and with *Sim* as *esset* instead of the Future Imperfect, or *Piu-perfect* of the Subjunctive; as, *Non dubito quin sit facturus*, I doubt not but he will do it. *Non dubita quin esset facturus*, I doubted not but he would do it; and not *quin fecerit* or *faceret*, or *secisset*.

6. We have not joined ERO with FUERO for the Future of the Subjunctive, because we thought it incongruous to couple Words of different Mood. Tho' it must be owned that it comes nearer in Signification to the Fut. of Subjunctive, than that of the Indicative; as, Ovid. *Qui cum vietus erit*, much the same as *Vietus fuerit*: And so these ancient Lawyers, Scavi, Brutus and Manilius understood the Words of the Atinian Law, *Quod subreptum erit, ejus rei aeterna auctoritas esto*. But that a Preterite Time there insinuated, is owing not to the Word *erit*, but to the Preterite Particle with which it is joined; as they learnedly argue. See *Aulus Gellius XVII. cap. 7.*

7. We have omitted the Termination MINOR in the second Person Plural of the Imperative, not thinking it fit to make that an ordinary Standard (as the common Rudiments do) which is to be found only once or twice Plautus, Epid. 5. 2. *Facto opere arbitraminor*. And Pseud. 2. 2. *Par progredimino*.

8. For the same Reason we have excluded the ancient Termination ASS in the Future Subjunctive of the first Conjugation; as, *Excantasso* in the Laws of the 12 Tables, *Levasso* in *Ennius*, *Abjurasso*, *invitasso*, *Cenasso*, *Itatto*, *Servasso*, &c. in *Plautus*; for *Excantavero*, *Letavero*, &c. to which may be added ESSO of the second Conjugation; as, *Licesshi*, *Idem*; *Probessit*, Cic. for *Lacuerit*, *probibuerit*; To these some add, *Jusso* for *jussere* that of *Virg. En. 11. v. 467.*

*Cetera, qua jusso, mecum manus inferat arma.*

But, tho' I was once of that Opinion, yet I now incline with *Vossius* to this that it is only a Syncope: But not for the Reason brought for it by him, namely, that the other Examples in so change r into s, as *Levaro*, *levas*; but because I believe these old Futures were formed not from the common Futures in ero, as he supposes; but from the second Person Sing. of the Present of the Indic. by adding so; as *levas*, *levasso*; *Probibes*, *probibesso*: According to which Rule *Jubeo* must have formed *jubesso*, not *jusso*.

9. Upon the same account we have omitted the Future of the Infinitive ASSERE formed from ASSO; as, *Impetrassere, reconciliassere, expugnare, in Plautus; for impetraturum esse, &c.*

10. Tho' we frequently meet with *amaturus* and *amatus esse vel fuisse*, in the Nominative; as, *Dicitur amaturus esse*, yet we have contented ourselves with the Accusative *amatum* and *amatum*, as most common, serving the Distinction between these to Construction. [See Pag. 77.]

11. The Future of the Infinitive Passive is made up of the first Supine and the Infinitive Passive of EO: And therefore it is not varied in Numbers and Genders, as the Parts made up of the Participle with *SUM*.

12. But the Supine with IRE is not the Future of the Infinitive Active, as we teach; for such Phrases as these, *Amatum ire, Doctum ire*, are rather the Present than Future Tense.

13. The Participle in DUS with *esse* and *fuisse*, is not properly the Future the Infinitive Passive, as is commonly believed: For it does not so much import Futurity, as Necessity, Duty, or Merit. For there is a great Difference between these two Sentences, *Dicit literas à se scriptum iri*, and *Dicit literas à se scribendas esse*; the first signifying, That a Letter will be written by him, or, That he will write a Letter; and the second, That a Letter must be written by him, or, He is obliged to write a Letter. For tho' *Sanctius* and *Messieurs de Port Royal* contend that this Participle is sometimes used simple Futurity, yet I think *Perizonius* and *Johnson* have clearly evinced the contrary.

14. It is to be noted, That the Imperative Mood wants the first Person Singular and Plural, because no Man can or needs command or exhort himself: Or, if he does, he must justle himself out of the first into the second person, as in that of *Catullus*, speaking to himself, *At tu Catulle destinatura*. But you *Catullus* continue obstinate.

15. The Present of the Subjunctive is most frequently used instead of the Imperative, especially in forbidding, after *Ne, nemo, nullus, &c.* as, *Vale, Farewell, for Vale. Ne facias, Do it not, rather than Ne fai.* And sometimes the Future of the Subjunctive; as, *Tu videris, See you to it. dixeris, Don't say it.* And sometimes also the Future of the Indicative; *Non occides, Thou shalt not kill, for Ne occide, or occidito. Sed valebis que negotia videbis, Cic. i. e. Sed vale meque negotia vide. Refers to hoc & nuncius ibis Pelida genitori, Virg. i. e. refer & ito.* But 'tis to be remarked that none of these are proper Imperatives; for the first is understood *oro, rogo, peto, or the like, with ut, &c. as also to the second, with ut understood, or ne expressit; and the third is only a Command by Consequence, cause of the Authority, Influence or Power of the Speaker.* For which reason, and to keep the Moods from interfering with one another, we have excluded these from the Imperative: Tho' the common Rudiments take in the first, and *Alvarus* the second and third. However 'tis observable that we use most Civility and Respect when we use the Subjunctive, and most Authority by the Future of the Indicative, and NOT of the Imperative; which is the ordinary Strain in which Laws are delivered. But this Rule is always followed.

16. The RIS of the second Person Passive is more usual than RE; ERUNT of the Perfect of the Indicative Active than ERE; especially in Prose, in which, if a Vowel follow, they are very rarely to be met with.

## III. REMARKS upon ENGLISH Verbs.

1. An English Verb hath only two Tenses, distinguished by different Terminations, and both in the Active Voice, viz. the Present and Preterite. The Present is the Verb itself, and the Preterite is commonly made by adding *ed* to it; or *d*, when it ends in *e*; as, *Fill*, filled; *Love*, loved.

2. All the other Parts of the Active, and the whole Passive, is made up of the Auxiliary Verbs, *Do*, *Have*, *Shall*, *Will*, *May*, *Can*, and *A'm*; as in Page 31. and in the Example, *To love*. Page 32, &c.

3. An English Verb hath different Terminations for the Persons of the Singular Number. The Present hath three or four. The first Person is the Verb it self; the second ends in *est* or *is*; the third in *eth*, *es* or *s*. The Preterite hath only two; the first commonly ending in *ed*, and the second in *ef* or *f*. But the third Person singular of the Preterite, and all the Persons Plural, both of it and the Present, cannot otherwise be distinguished than by the Nominatives before them; which therefore can never be omitted, as in the Latin.

4. We have two Participles, the Present ending always in *ing*, and the Preterite ending regularly in *ed*, but very frequently in *en* and *t*.

5. There are a great many Irregular English Verbs. But it is to be noted,  
1. That that Irregularity relates only to the Termination of the Preterite Tense, and the Passive Participle. 2. That it reaches only such Words as are native, and originally English. 3. That it is to be found only in Words of one Syllable, or derived from Words of one Syllable. 4. That where the Preterite is regular, the Passive Participle is the same with it. Except *Hew*ed; *Mow*ed, *Skew*ed, *Snow*ed, *Sow*ed; which have *Hewn*, *Mown*, *Shown*, *Sown*.

6. These Irregularities may be reduced to the following Heads:

(1.) The *d* is changed into *t* after *c*, *ch*, *sh*, *f*, *k*, *p*, *x*; and after *s* and *th*, when pronounced hard; and sometimes after *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, when a short Vowel goes before it; as, *Plac't*, *Snatch't*, *Fish't*, *Wak't*; *Dwelt*, *Smelt*. But when a long Vowel goes before *p*, it is either shortened, or changed into a short one; as, *Kept*, *Slept*, *Wept*, *Cript*, *Swept*, *Leapt*, from *keep*, *sleep*, *sweep*, *creep*, *sweep*, *leap*; as also sometimes before *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, and *v* turned into *f*; as, *Feel*, *felt*; *Dream*, *dreamt*; *Mean*, *meant*; *Leave*, *left*.

(2.) When the Present ends in *d*, or *t*, the Preterite is sometimes the same with it; as, *Read*, *Cast*, *Hurt*, *Burst*, *Hit*; *Quit*; and when two Vowels precede, the last is left out; as *Spread*, *spred*; *Lend*, *led*; *Feed*, *fed*; *Bleed*; *Meet*, *met*. When a Consonant comes before *d*, it is sometimes changed into *t*; as, *Bend*, *bent*; *Lend*, *lent*; *Send*, *sent*; *Rend*, *rent*; *Gird*, *girt*.

(3.) Most of the other irregular Verbs may be comprehended under the following Lists.

## I. Such as have their Preterite and Participle Passive the same.

<i>Awake</i> ,	<i>awoke</i> .	<i>Find</i> ,	<i>found</i> .	<i>Pay</i> ,	<i>paid</i> .	<i>Sting</i> ,	<i>stung</i> .
<i>Abide</i> ,	<i>abide</i> .	<i>Flee</i> ,	<i>fled</i> .	<i>Say</i> ,	<i>said</i> .	<i>Swing</i> ,	<i>swung</i> .
<i>Deserth</i> ,	<i>deserght</i> .	<i>Fling</i> ,	<i>flung</i> .	<i>Seek</i> ,	<i>sought</i> .	<i>Swim</i> ,	<i>swum</i> .
<i>Bind</i> ,	<i>bound</i> .	<i>Grind</i> ,	<i>ground</i> .	<i>Sell</i> ,	<i>sold</i> .	<i>Teach</i> ,	<i>taught</i> .
<i>Bring</i> ,	<i>brought</i> .	<i>Guild</i> ,	<i>gilt</i> .	<i>Sit</i> ,	<i>sat</i> .	<i>Tell</i> ,	<i>told</i> .
<i>Buy</i> ,	<i>bought</i> .	<i>Hang</i> ,	<i>hung</i> .	<i>Shine</i> ,	<i>shone</i> .	<i>Think</i> ,	<i>thought</i> .
<i>Catch</i> ,	<i>caught</i> .	<i>Hear</i> ,	<i>heard</i> .	<i>Spin</i> ,	<i>spun</i> .	<i>Work</i> ,	<i>wrought</i> .
<i>Dig</i> ,	<i>dug</i> .	<i>Lay</i> ,	<i>laid</i> .	<i>Spring</i> ,	<i>sprung</i> .	<i>Win</i> ,	<i>won</i> .
<i>Drink</i> ,	<i>drunk</i> .	<i>Lofe</i> ,	<i>lost</i> .	<i>Stand</i> ,	<i>stood</i> .	<i>Wind</i> ,	<i>wound</i> .
<i>Fight</i> ,	<i>fought</i> .	<i>Make</i> ,	<i>made</i> .	<i>Stick</i> ,	<i>stuck</i> .	<i>Wring</i> ,	<i>wrong</i> .

## Part II. Chap. III. of Verb.

49

II. Such as have the Preterite and Participle different; as,

bore, born.	Freeze, froze, frozen.	Shrink, shrank, shrank.
began, begun.	Get, got, gotten.	Sink, sank, sunk.
bad, bidden.	Give, gave, given.	Slay, slew, slain.
beat, beaten.	Go, went, gone.	Slide, slid,滑den.
bit, bitten.	Grow, grew, grown.	Smite, smote, smitten.
blew, blown.	Hew, hewed, hewn.	Strike, struck, stricken.
chid, chidden.	Hide, hid, hidden.	Speak, spoke, spoken.
chose, chosen.	Hold, held, holden.	Spit, spat, spitten.
clove, cleft.	Know, knew, known.	Strive, strove, striven.
came, come.	Ly, lay, lay'n.	Swear, swore, sworn.
crew, crow'd.	Ride, rode, ridden.	Swell, swel'd, swolo.
durst, dared.	Ring, rang, rung.	Take, took, taken.
did, done.	Rise, rose, risen.	Tear, tore, torn.
drew, drawn.	Run, ran, run.	Thrive, thrrove, thriven.
drove, driven.	See, saw, seen.	Throw, threw, thrown.
eat, eaten.	Seeth, sod, sodden.	Tread, trode, trodden.
fell, fallen.	Shake, shook, shaken.	Wear, wore, worn.
flew, flown.	Shear, shore, shorn.	Weave, wove, woven.
take, forsook, forsaken.	Shoot, shot, shotten.	Write, wrote, written.

These Preterites, *Bare, Share, Sware, Tare, Ware, Cleve, Gat, Begat, For-Brake, Shape, Slang, Sprang, Swang, Wan, Stank, Sank*, are seldom used; but, *Beseech'd, Catch'd, Work'd, Digg'd, Gild'd, Gird'd, Hang'd, Writ, for Besought, Caught, &c.* are frequently to be met with.

OTE, 1. That when the Verb ends in one Consonant, that Consonant is in most part doubled before ing, ed, est, and eth; as, *Worship, wor-ning, worshipped, worshippes, worshippedt, worshippeth*: As also before as, *Bid, bidden*.

OTE, 2. That the APOSTROPHUS (which was become too common English Verbs; as, *Lov'd, lov'ft, for loved, loveft*,) begins now to be dispised by the most polite Writers in Prose; but Poets still use it, tho' not so as formerly.

OTE, 3. That the Preterite Active and the Participle Passive (when one serves for both) are thus distinguished: When it hath nothing before it the Nominative alone, or have or had with it, it is the Preterite Active; but if it hath any part of the helping Verb AM, it is the Participle Passive. EXCEPT Come, Gone, Run, Set, Risen, Fallen, Grown, Withered, and like Intransitive Verbs, which have frequently the Passive Signs AM, E, &c. instead of HAVE in the Perfect Tense; and WAS, WAST, instead of HAD, in the Plu-perfect; as, *Veni, I am come; Venram, I come*.

OTE, 4. That tho' the Latin Perfect frequently answers both to HAVE DID (or the Preterite Termination ED, &c.) yet they seem to be thus distinguished. DID or ED, &c. respects a certain past Time, in which the thing was finished, or a finishing; as, *I wrote, or did write yesterday*: HAVE speaks of a thing as but just now past, or at least does not refer to any particular time that it happened at; as, *I have written my Letter, i.e., just I have read of Julius Caesar, i.e., some time or other*. The first of these is called the Preterperfect Definite, and the other the Preterperfect Indefinite.

OTE, 5. That SHALL and WILL by Mr. Brightland are thus distinguished;

## Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

In the First Person simply SHALL foretells ;  
 In WILL a Threat, or else a Promise dwells.  
 SHALL in the Second and the Third does threat ;  
 WILL simply then foretells the future Feat.

By Mr. Turner thus,

WILL imports the Will or Purpose of the Person it is joined with ; SHALL implies the Will of another, who promises or threatens to do the Thing, cause it to be done, permits it, commands it, or the like.

### De Formatione Verborum.

**Q**uartuor sunt Terminations Verbi, à quibus reliquæ omnes formantur; scilicet o Præsentis, i Præteriti, um Supini, & re Infinitivi, hoc modo;

1. Ab o formantur am & em.
2. Ab i formantur ram, rim, ro, stem & se.
3. Ab um formantur u, us & rus.
4. A re formantur reliquæ omnes; nempe, bam, bo, rem, a, e, i, ns, dus, dum, di, do.

### Of the Formation of Verbs.

**T**here are four Terminations of a Verb, from which all the rest are formed; namely, o of the Present, i of the Preterite, um of Supine, and re of the Infinitive, after this Manner;

1. From o are formed am and em.
2. From i, ram, rim, ro, stem and se.
3. U, us and rus are form'd from u.
4. All other Parts from re do come As, bam, bo, rem, a, e and ns and dus, dum, do and di.

In every complete Verb there are commonly four PRINCIPAL PARTS, viz. the Present of the Indicative in O, the Preterite or Perfect in I, first Supine in UM, and the Present of the Infinitive in RE. The first (which is therefore called the THEME or Root of the Verb) gives Origin to the whole Verb, either mediately or immediately. The Preterite, the first Supine and the Present of the Infinitive, come from it immediately, and all the rest from them; except the Future of the Indicative in am, and the Present Subjunctive in em or am, which by this Scheme are also formed immediately from the Present in O.

It is to be noted, That the Preterites and Supines of the First Conjugation end commonly in avi and atum, of the Second in ui and itum, and of Fourth in ius and itum. But the Third Conjugation cannot be reduced to general Rule, and there are a great many Exceptions in the other three, which are therefore to be learned by daily Practice, till the Scholar is advanced in that Part of Grammar that treats particularly of them.

But the Present of the Infinitive, and all the other Parts of the Verb, are regularly formed after one fixt and uniform manner.

In the foregoing Rules of Formation, I have, for the Ease of the Memory, put the Terminations instead of the Moods and Tenses; but for the greater Plainness they may be thus expressed;

## Part II. Chap. III. of Verb. 51

I. From the Present of the *Indicative* are formed the Future of the *Indicative* of the *Third* and *Fourth Conjugations* in *am*, and the Present of the Subjunctive of the First in *em*, and of the other three in *am*.

II. From the Perfect of the *Indicative* are formed the *Plu-perfect* of it, *Perfēt*, *Plu-perfēt* and *Future* of the *Subjunctive*, and the *Perfect* of *Infinitive*.

III. From the First Supine is formed the Last Supine, the Participle *Perfēt* and *Future Active*.

IV. From the Present of the *Infinitive* are formed the *Imperfēt* of the *Indicative*, the *Future* of the same when it ends in *BO*, (*viz.* in the first and second *Conjugations*), the *Imperfēt* of the *Subjunctive*, the *Imperative*, the *Participles Present* and *Future Passive*, and the *Gerunds*.

NOTE, 1. That Verbs in *IO* of the *Third Conjugation* retain *i* before *unt*, *to*, *ebam*, *am*, *ens*, *endus*, *endum*; but lose it in the Present of the *Indicative*, and *Imperfēt* of the *Subjunctive*.

NOTE, 2. That the last Person Plur. of the *Imperative* may be formed by adding *o* to the same Person of the Present of the *Indicative*; as, *Amant*, *santos*; *docent*, *docento*.

NOTE, 3. That the *Passive Voice* is formed from the same *Tenses* of the *Indicative* (except where *Sum* is used) by adding *r* to *o*, or changing *m* into *r*.

NOTE, 4. That the Present of the *Infinitive Passive* of the *Third Conjugation* may be formed by taking *s* from the Second Person of the Present of the *Indicative Active*; as, *legis*, *legi*; or when the Verb is *Deponent*, by changing *or*, or *ior*, into *i*; as *Proficior*, *profici*s**; *morior*, *mori*s**.

NOTE, 5. That the Present of the *Infinitive Active*, and the Second Person of the *Indicative* and *Imperative Passive* in *re*, are always the same.

NOTE, 6. That the Second Person Plural of the Present of the *Indicative*, of the *Imperative*, are the same in the *Passive Voice*.

NOTE, 7. That where any of the *Principal Parts* are wanting, these Parts commonly wanting that come from them: For which Reason Grammarians give *Supines* to a great many Verbs, which yet are not to be found in any Author, because the *Participles* formed from them are found: And they suppose likewise all *Deponent Verbs* of old to have had the *Active Voice*, and consequently *Supines*, tho' now lost.

NOTE, 8. That all Verbs of the *Second Conjugation* end in *eo*, and all verbs of the *Fourth* in *io*, except *eo* and *queo*. There are Eight Verbs in *eo* of the *first Conjugation*, *viz.* *beo*, *creo*, *scro*, *meo*, *calceo*, *laqueo*, *nauseo*, *nuncio*. There are Twenty two in *io* of the *First*, *viz.* *glacio*, *macio*, *crucio*, *in*, *nuntio*, *fascio*, *radio*, *bio*, *retalio*, *spolio*, *ampito*, *lanio*, *somnito*, *pio*, *vario*, *decurvo*, *decentriuo*, *succentriuo*, *furio*, *bafio* and *vitio*; and Twelve in the *Third*, *viz.* *capiō*, *facio*, *jacio*, *lacio*, *specio*, *fodio*, *fugio*, *cupio*, *rapio*, *pario*, *quatio*; with their Compounds.

It is not, in my Opinion, necessary to trouble the Learner with a particular Account how the respective Changes in the Moods, Tenses, Numbers Persons are made; they being obvious from the Examples above, in which I have distinguished them from the *Body* or *Essential Part* of the Verb by a *Division* or *Hyphen*. And perhaps this alone, without any other particular Rule, might be a sufficient Direction. For to conjugate one by the Example of another, we have no more to do, but instead of the *Essential Part* of the one (which is all that stands before *o*, *eo*, or *io* of the Present of the *Indicative*) to substitute the *Essential Part* of the other; and then to add to it the additional syllables it receives.

## 52 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

in Conjugation as before. Only we are to advert, 1. That in the *Preteritum* and *Supines*, and the *Parts* that come from them, we are to reckon all *be* and *am* for the Body of the Verb, adding the usual Syllables to it, as in *Active Voice* of *Lego*. 2. In Verbs in *io* we are to retain or omit the *i*, *Note 1.*

There is yet another way of the Formation of Verbs, differing only from the First Method in this, that what Parts according to it are formed from Infinitive, are by this formed from the First or Second Person of the Present of the Indicative. But tho' this may be the more natural way, yet the other is more easy and uniform.

### *De Verbis Irregularibus.*

**I**RREGULARIA Verba vulgo recensentur octo, viz. *Sum, Eo, Queo, Volo, Nolo, Malo, Fero & Fio*, cum Compositis.

### Of Irregular Verbs.

**T**He IRREGULARIA are commonly reckoned Eight, viz. *Sum, Eo, Queo, Volo, Nolo, Malo, Fero & Fio*, with their Compoundia.

### S U M.

*Sum, fui, esse, To be.*

### *INDICATIVUS.*

### *SUBJUNCTIVUS.*

#### *Præsens.*

<i>Sum,</i>	<i>I am,</i>
<i>Es,</i>	<i>Thou art,</i>
<i>Est:</i>	<i>He is :</i>
<i>Sumus,</i>	<i>We are,</i>
<i>Eritis,</i>	<i>Te are,</i>
<i>Sunt.</i>	<i>They are.</i>

<i>Sim,</i>	<i>I may or can be,</i>
<i>Sis,</i>	<i>Thou may'st or can</i>
<i>Sit:</i>	<i>He may or can be,</i>
<i>Simus,</i>	<i>We may or can be,</i>
<i>Sitis,</i>	<i>Te may or can be,</i>
<i>Sint.</i>	<i>They may or can be,</i>

#### *Imperfectum.*

<i>Eram,</i>	<i>I was,</i>
<i>Eras,</i>	<i>Thou wast,</i>
<i>Erat:</i>	<i>He was :</i>
<i>Eramus,</i>	<i>We were,</i>
<i>Eritis,</i>	<i>Te were,</i>
<i>Erant.</i>	<i>They were.</i>

<i>Essem,</i>	<i>I might, &amp;c. be,</i>
<i>Esse,</i>	<i>Thou mightest be,</i>
<i>Eset:</i>	<i>He might be :</i>
<i>Essemus,</i>	<i>We might be,</i>
<i>Esetis,</i>	<i>Te might be,</i>
<i>Essent.</i>	<i>They might be,</i>

#### *Perfectum.*

<i>Fui,</i>	<i>I have been,</i>
<i>Fuisti,</i>	<i>Thou hast been,</i>
<i>Fuit:</i>	<i>He hath been :</i>
<i>Fuimus,</i>	<i>We have been,</i>
<i>Fuistis,</i>	<i>Te have been,</i>
<i>Fuerunt,</i>	<i>They have been.</i>
<i>vel ecre.</i>	

<i>Fuerim,</i>	<i>I may have been,</i>
<i>Fueris,</i>	<i>Thou may'st have</i>
<i>Fuerit:</i>	<i>He may have been,</i>
<i>Fuerimus,</i>	<i>We may have been,</i>
<i>Fueritis,</i>	<i>Te may have been,</i>
<i>Fuerint.</i>	<i>They may have been,</i>

is,  
erat

mu

tis,

ant.

IM

EF

EE

EF

LSU

he C

RO

ith

IC

J.

ERA

OSSU

or the

ny ot

old po

ld A

Poffu

Potera

Potui,

Potuer

Potero

## Part II. Chap. III. of Verb.

53

### Plusquamperfectum.

eram, I had been,	Fuisse, I might, &c. have
eras, Thou hadst been,	Fuisses, Thou mightest have
erat: He had been:	Fuissest: He might have
eramus, We had been,	Fuissimus, We might have
eratis, Ye had been,	Fuissetis, Te might have
erant. They had been.	Fuisserint. They might have

or had been.

### Futurum.

I shall or will be,	Fuero, I shall have been,
Thou shalt or will be,	Fueris, Thou shalt have been,
He shall or will be:	Fuerit: He shall have been:
We shall or will be,	Fuerimus, We shall have been,
Te shall or will be,	Fueritis, Te shall have been,
They shall or will be.	Fuerint. They shall have been.

### IMPERATIVUS.

### INFINITIVUS.

Es vel } Be thou,	Praef. Esse, To be.
Esto, }	Perf. Fuisse, To have been.
Esto: Let him be:	Fut. Futurum To be about
Este vel }	esse vel fuisse. to be.
Estote, }	

### PARTICIPIUM.

Sunto. Let them be. Fut. Futurus. About to be.

The Compounds of SUM are, *Adsum, absum, desum, intersum, prafsum, sum, subsum, supersum, insum, prosum & possum*. The first Eight are considered as the Simple SUM: *Insum* wants the Preterite and its Descendants; they do not use *Insui, insuisti, insueram, &c.*

ROSUM, To do good, has a d where SUM begins with e; as,

[Praef. Pro-sum, prod-es, prod-est: pro-sumus, prod-estis, pro-sunt.  
Imp. Prod-cram, prod-eras, prod-erat: prod-eramus, &c.

Prod-essem, prod-esses, prod-estet: prod-estemus, &c.

ERAT. Prod-esto, prod-este. INFINIT. Praef. Prod-esse.

SSUM should be pot-sum (as being compounded of potis, able, and SUM) for the better Sound, t is changed into s before another, and retained by other Letter: And for the same Reason f is always taken away. Pot- and posse are contracted for Poteſſem, poſſeſſe, which yet are to be found in old Authors; thus,

¶ Posſum, potui, poſſe, To be able.

### INDICATIVUS.

Posſum, potes, potest: posſumus, potestis, poſſunt.

Poteram, poteras, poterat: poteramus, poteratis, poterant.

Potui, potuisti, potuit: potuimus, potuistis, potuerunt v. potuere.

Potueram, potueras, potuerat: potueramus, potueratis, potuerant.

Potero, poteris, poterit: poterimus, poteritis, poterunt.

## S U B J U N C T I V U S.

*Præf.* Possim, possis, possit: possimus, possitis, possint.  
*Imp.* Possem, posses, posset: possemus, possitis, possent.  
*Perf.* Potuerim, potueris, potuerit: potuerimus, potueritis, potuerint.  
*Plus.* Potuisse, potuisset: potuissimus, potuissetis, potuissent.  
*Fut.* Potuero, potueris, potuerit: potuerimus, potueritis, potuerint.

## I N F I N I T I V U S.

*Præf.* Posse.*Perf.* Potuisse.*The rest wanting.*

## E O.

Eo, ivi, itum, ire, *To go.*

## I N D I C A T I V U S.

*Præf.* Eo, is, it; iimus, itis, eunt.  
*Imp.* Ibam, ibas, ibat; ibamus, ibatis, ibant.  
*Perf.* Ivi, ivisti, ivit; ivimus, ivistis, { iverupt.  
v. ivem.  
*Plus.* Iveram, iveras, iverat; iveramus, iveratis, iverant.  
*Fut.* Ibo, ibis, ibit; ibimus, ibitis, ibunt.

## S U B J U N C T I V U S.

*Præf.* Eam, eas, eat; eamus, eatis, eant,  
*Imp.* Irem, ires, iret; iremus, iretis, irent.  
*Perf.* Iverim, iveris, iverit; iverimus, iveritis, iverint.  
*Plus.* Ivissem, ivisses, ivisset; ivissemus, ivissetis, ivissent.  
*Fut.* Ivero, iveris, iverit; iverimus, iveritis, iverint.

## I M P E R A T I V U S.

## I N F I N I T I V U S.

*Præf.* { I, ito; { ite, eunto.*Præf.* Ire.{ ito, { itote, eunto.*Perf.* Ivisse.*Fut.* Iturum { esse,{ fuisse.

## P A R T I C I P I A.

## S U P I N A.

## G E R U N D I A.

*Præf.* Iens, Gen. euntis.

1. Itum.

Eundum.

*Fut.* Iturus, -2, -um,

2. Itu.

Eundi.

Eundo.

NOTE, 1. That in general EO is a Verb of the Fourth Conjugation.

NOTE, 2. That of old, Verbs of the Fourth had their Imperfect in *ibam*, and Future in *ibeo*, of which there are many Examples in *Plautus* and *Terence*, and some in *Virgil* and *Horace*.After the same manner the Compounds of EO are conjugated, viz. *Adabo*, *exo*, *oco*, *reden*, *subeo*, *pereo*, *cdeo*, *inco*, *praeo*, *anteo*, *prodeo*, *pratero*, *transeo*; *Adibam*, *adibo*, *adiens*, *adeuntis*, *addenendum*, &c. But *ambio* is a regular Verb of the Fourth Conjugation.

Note

## Part II. Chap. III. of Verb. 55

NOTE. That in the Compounds, *ini*, *iusti*, &c. are seldom used, but they contracted into *ii*, *iusti*; *as*, *adii*, *adijisti*, and sometimes *adisti*: So *adi-*  
*m*, *adierim*, &c.

QUEO, *I can*, and NEQUO, *I cannot*, are conjugated the same way  
EO; they only want the *Imperative* and the *Gerunds*; and the *Parti-*  
*cles* are scarcely in Use.

### N O L O.

Volo, volui, velle, *To will, or be willing.*

#### I N D I C A T I V U S.

aſ. Volo,	vis, vult;	volumus, vultis, volunt.
pp. Vol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat;	-ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.	
erf. Vol-ui, -uifti, -uit;	-uimus, -uiftis, -uerunt, -uer-	
us. Vol-ueram, -ueras, -uerat;	-ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.	
st. Volam, -voles, volet;	volemus, voletis, voilent.	

#### S U B F U N C T I V U S.

aſ. Velim,	velis, velit;	velimus, velitis, velint.
pp. Vellem,	velles, vellet;	vellemus, velletis, vellent.
erf. Vol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit;	-uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.	
us. Vol-uifsem, -uiffes, -uifset;	-uiffemus, -uifsetis, -uiffent.	
st. Vol-uereo, -ueris, -uerit;	-uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint,	

#### I N F I N I T I V U S.

aſ. Velle. Perf. Voluisse.

#### P A R T I C I P I U M.

Præf. Volens.

The rest are wanting.

### N O L O.

Nolo, nolui, nolle, *To be unwilling.*

#### I N D I C A T I V U S.

a. Nolo,	non-vis, non-vult;	nolumus, non-vultis, nolunt.
pp. Nol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat;	-ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.	
er. Nol-ui, -uifti, -uit;	-uimus, -uiftis, -uerunt, -uer-	
us. Nol-ueram, -ueras, -uerat;	-ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.	
st. Nolam, -noles, nolet;	-nolemus, noletis, noalent,	

#### S U B F U N C T I V U S.

aſ. Nolim,	nolis, noſit;	nolimus, nolitis, nolint.
pp. Nollem,	nolles, nolet;	nollemus, nolletis, nollent.

## 56 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

Perf. Nol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -ueri  
Plus. Nol-uissim, -uisses, -uisset; -uissimus, -uissetis, -uisset

Fut. Nol-uerio, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -ueri

*IMPERATIVUS. INFINITIVUS. PARTICIPIUS.*

Praf. { Noli, { nolite, | Pr. Nolle. Praf. Nolemus. Tu  
{ Nolito: { nolitote. | Per. Noluisse. The rest wanting. Tu

## M A L O.

Malo, malai, malle, *To be more willing.*

### I N D I C A T I V U S.

Pr. Malo, mavis, mavult; malumus, mavultis, malu

Imp. Mal-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebam

Per. Mal-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -u

Plus. Mal-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uer

Fut. Mal-am, -es, -et; &c. This is scarcely in Use.

### S U B J U N C T I V U S.

Pr. Malim, malis, malit; malimus, malitis, malin

Imp. Mallem, malles, mallet; mallemus, malletis, malle

Per. Mal-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -ueri

Plus. Mal-uissim, -uisses, -uisset; -uissimus, -uissetis, -uisset

Fut. Mal-uerio, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -ueri

### I N F I N I T I V U S.

Praf. Malle. Perf. Maluisse.

NOTE, That *Volo*, *Nolo* and *Malo*, retain something of the Third Conjugation; for *Vis*, *vultis* are contracted of *Volis*, *volit*, *volitis*; and changed into *s*, for of old they said *Volt*, *voltis*.

*Nolo* is compounded of *Non-volo*, and *Malo* of *magis volo*.

## F E R O.

### V O X A C T I V A.

Fero, tuli, latum, ferre, *To bring or suffer.*

### I N D I C A T I V U S.

Pr. Fero, fers, fert; ferimus, fertis, ferunt

Imp. Ferebam, ferebas, ferebat; ferebamus, ferebatis, fereba

Per. Tuli, tulisti, tulit; tulimus, tulistis, { tulere

Plus. Tuleram, tuleras, tulerat; tuleramus, tuleratis, tuleras

Fut. Feram, feres, feret; feremus, feretis, ferent.

SU

S U B J U N C T I V U S.

- Feram, feras, ferat; feramus, feratis, ferant.  
 Ferem, ferres, ferret; ferremus, ferretis, ferrent.  
 Tul-erim, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.  
 Tul-issem, -isses, -isset; -issemus, -issetis, -issent.  
 Tul-ero, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.

I M P E R A T I V U S.

- as. { Fer, fert; { fert, ferte,  
 Ferto, ferto; { fertote, fertunto.

I N F I N I T I V U S.

- Pr. Ferre.  
 Per. Tulisse.  
 Fut. Laturum  
 esse vel fuisse.

P A R T I C I P I A.

as. Ferens.

s. Latus, -a, -um.

S U P I N A.

1. Latum.

2. Latu.

G E R U N D I A.

- Ferendum,  
 Ferendi,  
 Ferendo.

V O X P A S S I V A.

- Feror, latus, ferri.

I N D I C A T I V U S.

- es. Feror, { ferri, fertur; ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.  
 Fer-ebar, { ebari, -ebatur; -ebamur, ebamini, -ebantur.  
 Latus sum vel fui, latus es vel fuisti, &c.  
 Latus eram vel fueram, latus eras vel fueras, &c.

S U B J U N C T I V U S.

- es. Ferar, { feraris, feretur; feremur, feremini, ferentur.  
 Ferrer, [ ferrari, ferretur; ferremur, ferremini, ferrantur.  
 Latus sim vel fuerim, latus sis vel fueris, &c.  
 Latus essem vel fuissim, latus esse vel fuisses, &c.  
 Latus fuerio, latus fueris, &c.

I M P E R A T I V U S.

- es. { Ferre, fertor; ferimini, ferunctor.  
 { Fertor,

I N F I N I T I V U S.

es. Ferri.

s. Latum { esse,  
 fuisse.

s. Latum iri.

P A R T I C I P I A.

- Perf. Latus, -a, -um.  
 Fut. Ferendus, -s, -um.

## 58 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

NOTE, That *Fero* is a Verb of the Third Conjugation, *Fers, fert, fertis, fert, ferte, ferris, ferre, servis, seritur, fertor, being contracted of Feris, ferit, fertis, ferto, ferite, servere, fereris, fertur and fertor.*

Also *Fer* is contracted of *fere*: Which in like manner has happened to the Imperatives of *Dico, ducos, facio*, they having *dic, duc, fac*, instead of *dice, duce, face*.

The Compounds of *Fero* are conjugated the same way as the Simple s; as, *Affero, attuli, allatum; Aufero, abstuli, ablatum; Differo, distuli, dilatum; Consero, contuli, collatum; Insero, intuli, illatum; Offero, obtuli, oblatum; Effero, extuli, elatum*: So *Circumfero, persero, transfero, defero, profero, antefero, prafero*.

### F I O.

*Fio, factus, fieri, To be made; or to become.*

#### I N D I C A T I V U S.

<i>Præf.</i>	<i>Fio,</i>	<i>fis,</i>	<i>fit;</i>	<i>fimus,</i>	<i>fitis,</i>	<i>fiunt.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Fiebam,</i>	<i>fiebas,</i>	<i>fiebat;</i>	<i>fiebamus,</i>	<i>fiebatis,</i>	<i>fiebant.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Factus sum vel</i>	<i>sui,</i>	<i>factus es vel</i>	<i>fueristi,</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>	
<i>Plus.</i>	<i>Factus eram vel</i>	<i>fueram,</i>	<i>factus eras vel</i>	<i>fueras,</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>	
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Factum,</i>	<i>fies,</i>	<i>fiet;</i>	<i>fiemus,</i>	<i>fietis,</i>	<i>fient.</i>

#### S U B J U N C T I V U S.

<i>Præf.</i>	<i>Fiam,</i>	<i>fias,</i>	<i>fiat;</i>	<i>fiamus,</i>	<i>fiatis,</i>	<i>fiant.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Fierem,</i>	<i>fieres,</i>	<i>fieret;</i>	<i>fieremus,</i>	<i>fieretis,</i>	<i>fieren-</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Factus sim vel</i>	<i>fuerim,</i>	<i>factus sis vel</i>	<i>fueris,</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>	
<i>Plus.</i>	<i>Factus essem vel</i>	<i>fuerissem,</i>	<i>factus esras vel</i>	<i>fuerisses,</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>	
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Factus fuero,</i>	<i>factus fueris,</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>			

#### I M P E R A T I V U S.

<i>Præf.</i>	<i>{ Fi,*</i>	<i>fite,</i>	
	<i>{ Fito,</i>	<i>fito;</i>	<i>{ fitote,</i>
			<i>fiunto.</i>

#### I N F I N I T I V U S.

<i>Pr.</i>	<i>Fieri.</i>
<i>Per.</i>	<i>Factum</i>
	<i>{ effi-</i>
	<i>{ fuisse.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Factum iri.</i>

#### P A R T I C I P I A.

<i>Per.</i>	<i>Factus,</i>	<i>-a,</i>	<i>-um.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Faciendus,</i>	<i>-a,</i>	<i>-um.</i>

#### S U P I N U M.

*Factu.*

\* Tho' *Fi* is rejected by some Grammarians of great Note, yet we have given it Place here, not only because it is to be found in *Plautus*, but also *Horace, Lib. 2. Sat. 5. ver. 38, Fi cognitor ipse*, according to the best MSS. and Editions.

## Part II. Chap. III. of Verb. 59

**NOTE.** 1. That *Fio* is the Passive of *Facio*, To make, (which is regular) instead of *Factio*, which is not in use: Yet the Compounds of *Facio*, which change *a* into *i*, are regular; as, *afficior*, *afficiens*, *affici* & *perficior*, *perficiens*, *fici*.

**NOTE.** 2. That the Compounds of *Facio*, with Verbs, Nouns or Adverbs, retain the *a*, and have their Imperative As, *sac*, and their Passive Form (when used) *fio*; as, *Calefacio*, *incrafacio*, *benefacio* & *calefac*, *calefio*, &c. at these compounded with a Preposition change the *a* into *i*, and have *fici* & *ficior*. There are some compounded of *facio* and a Noun, where *facio* is ranged into *ficio* of the First Conjugation & as *magnifico*, *significo*.

To the Irregular Verbs may be reduced EDO, to eat, which in some of Parts falls in with the Verb *SUM*; thus,

ID. *Pres.* *Edo*, es, est; estis, - - -  
JB. *Imp.* *Esem*, effes, effet, effemus, effetis, effent.

**IMPERAT.** Es vel esto, . . . este vel estote. **INFIN.** Effe. Likewise its Compounds, *Comedo*, *comes*, *comest*, &c. and *Exedo*, *exes*, *est*, &c. But all these may likewise be regularly conjugated, *Edo*; *edis*, *est*, &c. *Ederem*, *ederes*, *ederet*, &c.

### Of Defective Verbs.

Ho' some of the Irregular Verbs already mentioned want some of their Parts, and upon that account may be called also Defective Verbs, yet DEFECTIVE Verbs here we chiefly understand such as want considerable Branches, or are used only in few Tenses and Persons. We shall set down those that most frequently occur. I. AIO, I say; INQUAM, I say; FO. EM, I should be; AUSIM, I dare; FAXIM, I'll see to it, or, I will; it; AVE and SALVE, God save you, Hail, Good morrow & CEDO, or give me; QUIESO, I pray.

ID.	<i>Pres.</i> Aio,	ais,	ait;		aiunt.
	{ <i>Imp.</i> Aiebam,	{ <i>ebas</i> ,	{ <i>ebat</i> & <i>ebamus</i> ,	{ <i>ebatis</i> ,	{ <i>ebant</i> .
	{ <i>Perf.</i> . . .	{ <i>aisti</i> ,			
JB.	{ <i>Pres.</i> . . .	{ <i>aias</i> ,	{ <i>aiat</i> ;	{ <i>aiatis</i> ,	{ <i>aiant</i> .
	{ <i>IMPERAT.</i> ai.	{ <i>PARTICIP.</i> . . .	{ <i>Pres.</i> aiens.]		
	{ <i>Pres.</i> Inquam, inquis, inquir; inquimus, inquistis, inquirit;	{ <i>Imp.</i> inquebat,	{ <i>Perf.</i> inquisti,	{ <i>Fut.</i> inquier;	{ <i>inquiet</i> .
	{ <i>Imp.</i> . . .	{ <i>inquebat</i> ,	{ <i>Fut.</i> inquier;	{ <i>inquiet</i> ,	{ <i>inquietab</i> .
	{ <i>IMPERAT.</i> inque, ito.	{ <i>PARTICIP.</i> . . .	{ <i>Pres.</i> inquiet.		

E. { *Imp.* Fore, fores, forest & foremus, foretis, forent.

F. Fore, to be, or to be about to be, the same with *saturnum esse*.

{ *Pres.* Ausim, ausis, ausit;

JB. { *Perf.* Faxim, faxis, faxit;

{ *Fut.* Faxo, faxis, faxit;

Note, That *faxim* and *faxo* are used instead of *fecerim* and *fecero*.

PERAT.	{ <i>Ave</i> ,	averet.	<p>DIG. <i>Pres.</i> Quieso, quiescimus.</p>
--------	----------------	---------	--

**INFIN.** [averere.

[salvere.

## 60 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

II. These three Verbs, ODI, MEMINI, COEPI, have only the *Pret*erite Tense and what is formed from it, and therefore are by some called PRETERITIVE Verbs; thus,

Odi, oderam, oderim, odissim, odero, odisse.

Memini, meminoram, meminimerim, meminissim, meminero, meminisse.

Capi, caperam, caperim, capissem, capero, capisse.

But under them they comprehend also the Signification of the other Tenses, as, Memini, I remember, or I have remembred; Meminoram, I remembered or I had remembred, &c. So Odi, I hate, or I have hated; Capi, I begin or I have begun. Tho' I am not fully satisfied as to this last, for I do not know any Example where Capi doth clearly signify the Present Tense.

Memini hath also the Imperative Memento, Remember thou; Memento, Remember ye. Some add Meminens, Remembring, which is scarcely to be imitated.

To these some add NOVI, because it frequently hath the Signification of the Present, I know, as well as, I have known; tho' it comes from Novus, which is complete.

NOTE, 1. That Odiens is to be found in Petronius; Odiatur in Seneca, Capio in Plautus and Terence. See Voss. Analog. Lib. III. Cap. 39.

NOTE, 2. That the Particles Cæptus and Osus, with its Compounds Pausus, exosus, are in use among the best Authors; but Perodi and Exodi are not.

III. Fari, To speak, wants the first Person of the Present Indic. and perhaps the whole Present of the Subjunctive, for we do not say For, or Fer, as rarely Feris, fetur, &c. So likewise Daris and Daris, but not Dor or Der, to be given. The Compounds of the First, as Effor, Affor, are rare; but the Compounds of the other, as Addor, Reddor, are common.

IV. Most of the other Defective Verbs are but single Words, and rarely be found but among Poets; as, Infit, he begins; Defit, it is wanting. Some are compounded of a Verb with the Conjunction Si, as Sis, for Si vis, If thou wilst; Sultis, for Si vultis, If ye will; Sodes, for Si andes, If thou darest.

### Of Impersonal Verbs.

These are also a kind of Defective Verbs, which for the most part are used only in the Third Person Sing. They have the Sign IT before them in English; as, Penitet, it repents; Placet, it pleases: And are thus conjugated;

Pres.	Imperf.	Perfect.	Plusquam.	Future.
IND. Penitet, penitebat, penituit, penituerat, penitebit.				
SUB. Penitecat, penitcret, penituerit, penituisset, penituerit.				
INF. Penitere, . . . . . penituiffe.				

Most Verbs may be used impersonally in the passive Voice, especially such as otherwise have no Passive; as,

Pres.	Imperf.	Perfect.	Plusquam.	Fut.
IND. Pugnatur, pugnabatur, pugnatum { est, .atum { erat, pugnabit.				
SUB. Pugnetur, pugnaretur, pugnatum, { fuit, .atum { fuerat, pugnabit.				
INF. Pugnari, . . . . . pugnatum { sit, .atum { eset, -atum fuit, fuisse,				

NOTE, 1. That IMPERSONALS are applied to any Person or Number, by putting that which stands before other Verbs, after the Impersonals in the cases which they govern; as, *Pœnitit me, te, illum*, I repent, thou repenst, he repenteth, instead of *Ego pœnitio, &c.*, which is scarcely Latin. *Placet ibi, tibi, illi*, It pleases me, thee, him; or, I please, thou pleasest, &c. *Pugnat à me, à te, ab illo*, I fight, thou fightest, he fighteth, &c.

NOTE, 2. That Impersonals are not used in the Imperative, but instead of we take the Subjunctive.

NOTE, 3. That Impersonal Verbs are very often used personally, especially in the Plural Number; as, *Accidit, Contingit, Evenit, Pertinet, Decet, olet, Licet, Nocet, Patet, Placet, Praesat, &c.* For we say, *Tu mibi solus places; Nulli nocte; Multa homini accident, contingunt, eveniunt; Parum pars decent, &c.* But 'tis to be remarked that they are generally Impersonal, when an Infinitive or Subjunctive Mood follows; for tho' I can say, *Si places mibi, yet I cannot say, Si places audire, but Si placet tibi audire.* Again we cannot say, *Ego contigi esse domi, but Me contigit esse domi, or Aibi contigit esse domi.* Likewise *Evenit illum mori, or Ut ille moreretur;* but not *Ille evenit mori.*

[I shall not here enquire what is the Word understood to Impersonal Verbs, whether it is a Noun of the like Significations; as, *Pugna pugnatur, or the Word res or Negotium, or the Infinitive Mood.* Tho' I incline to think that any one of these will not answer to them all, but that there are some to which the First, to others the Second, and to others the Third, may be most fitly understood, as the Nature of the Verb and good Sense shall direct us. This we are sure of, that the Word understood can never be a Person properly so called, but a Thing; for which Reason, and the want of the two primary Persons, viz. the First and Second, they are called Impersonal, tho' some are much offended with the Name.]

## CAP. IV. De Participio.

**T**ria sunt præcipue consideranda in Participio, viz, *Tempus, Significatio & Declinatio.*

I. Tempora Participiorum sunt Tria, *Præsens, Præteritum & Futurum.*

*Præs.* { d. s. ns.  
*Præt.* { temp. s. tus, sus, xus.  
*Fut.* { temp. s. rus, dus.

II. Significatio Participiorum est vel *Activa*, vel *Pasiva*, vel *Neutra*, ad modum verborum à quibus descendent.

## CHAP. IV. Of Participle.

**T**here are three things especially to be considered in a Participle, viz. Time, Signification and Declension.

I. The Tenses of Participles are Three, the Present, Preterite and Future.

*Particip.* { Pres. { d. s. ns.  
            { Pres. { temp. s. tus, sus, xus.  
            { Fut. { temp. s. rus, dus.

II. The Signification of Participles is either Active, or Passive, or Neuter, after the Manner of the Verbs from which they come.

Parti-

**Participia**      in *ns* & *sus* plerumque  
sunt *Activa*.  
in *dus* semper *Passiva*.  
in *tus*, *sus*, *xus*, plerumque sunt *Passiva*, interdum vero *Activa*, vel etiam *Communia*.

III. Omnia Participia sunt Adjectiva: quæ desinunt in *ns* sunt *Tertiæ Declinationis*, reliqua autem omnia *Prima* & *Secunda*.

**Participles**      in *ns* and *sus* are generally *Active*.  
in *dus* always *Passive*.  
in *tus*, *sus*, *xus*, are generally *Passive*, sometimes *Active*, or also *Common*.

III. All Participles are Adjectives: These which end in *ns* are of the Third Declension, but all the rest are of the First and Second.

A PARTICIPLE is a kind of Adjective formed from a Verb, which its Signification always imports some Time.

It is so called, because it partakes of a Noun and a Verb, having Gender and Cases from the one, Time and Signification from the other, and Number from both.

1. ACTIVE Verbs [ See Chap. IX.] have two Participles, one of the Present Time ending in *ns*; as, *Amans*, Loving: and another of the Future ending in *russ*; as, *Amaturus*, About to love.

2. PASSIVE Verbs have likewise two Participles, one of the Present ending in *tus*, *sus*, or *xus*; as, *Amatus*, Loved; *Vixus*, Seen; *Flexus*, Bowed, (to which some add one in *us*, viz. *Mortuus*, Dead;) and another of the Future ending in *dus*; as, *Amandas*, To be loved.

3. NEUTER Verbs have two Participles, as the Actives; as, *Sedens*, Sitting, *Sessus*, About to sit.

4. ACTIVE INTRANSITIVE Verbs have frequently three Participles; as, *Carens*, Wanting, *Caritatus*, About to want, *Carendus*, To be wanted; *Dolens*, Grieving, *Dolitatus*, About to grieve, *Dolendus*, To be grieved: And sometimes four; as, *Vigilans*, Watching, *Vigilatus*, About to watch, *Vigilatus*, Watched, *Vigilandus*, To be watched.

5. DEONENT and COMMON Verbs have generally four Participles; as, *Loquens*, Speaking, *Locuturus*, About to speak, *Locutus*, Having spoken, *Loquendus*, To be spoken; *Dignans*, Vouchsafing, *Dignatus*, About to vouchsafe, *Dignatus*, Having vouchsafed, or being vouchsafed, *Dignus*, To be vouchsafed.

NOTE, That in some Deponent Verbs the Participle Perfect hath both Active and Passive Signification, tho' that of the Verb itself is only Active; as, *Testatus*, Having testified, or being testified. So *Mentitus*, *Meditatus*, *Oblitus*, &c.

NOTE, That it is essential to a Participle, I. That it come immediately from a Verb. II. That in its Signification it also include Time. Therefore *Tunicatus*, Coated, *Larvatus*, Masked, and such like, are not Participles, because they come from Nouns, and not from Verbs. And *Ignarus*, ignorant, *Elegans*, neat, *Circumspectus*, circumspect, *Tacitus*, silent, *Falsus*, *Profusus*, Prodigal, &c. are not Participles, because they do not signify Time.

There are a kind of Adjective Nouns ending in **UNDUS**, which approach very near to the Nature of *Participles*, such as *Exrabundus*, *Ludibundus*, *Opulabundus*. They are formed from the *Imperf.* of the *Judic.* and their Signification is much the same with the *Participle* of the *Present Time*; only they signify *Abundance* or a great deal of the Action, according to *A. Gellius*, lib. 11. Cap. 15. or, according to others, they signify the same with the *Participles* of *Frequentative Verbs*, when these are not in use. See *Gronovius Gellius*, as above cited.

### APPENDIX of Gerunds and Supines.

**GERUNDS** and **SUPINES** (which because of their near Relation to Verbs, are by some not improperly called *Participial Words*) are a sort of Substantive Nouns, expressing the Action of the Verb in general, or in the abstract. **GERUNDS** are Substantives of the second Declension, and complete in all their Cases, except the *Vocative*. **SUPINES** are Substantives of the fourth Declension, having only two Cases, the *Accusative* in **UM**, which makes the *First Supine*, and the *Ablative* in **U**, which makes the *Second*.

[*Vossius, Lib. 8. Cap. 54.* thinks that the *Last Supine* may sometimes be Dative; as, *Durum tactu*, i. e. *tactui*; for the *Datives* of the Fourth Declension ended in **ū**. Also *Lib. 7. Cap. 8.* he takes notice, that tho' these Supines have sometimes other Cases, (as *irrisu* etc) yet they are only reckoned Supines by Grammarians, when the First come after Verbs of Motion, and Second after Adjective Nouns: *Thus dignus irrisu* is a Supine (according to him;) *Non sine irrisu audientium*, is not.]

### De Indeclinabilibus Partibus Orationis.

#### CAP. V.

#### De Adverbio.

IN ADVERBIO potissimum spectanda est ejus significatio. Adverbiorum Significatio- variae sunt: earum verò recipue ad sequentia capita occari possunt.

### Of the Indeclinable Parts of Speech.

#### CHAP. V.

#### Of Adverb.

IN an ADVERB is chiefly to be considered its Signification.

The Significations of Adverbs are various: But the chief of them may be reduced to the following Heads.

ADVERB is an indeclinable Part of Speech, which being joined to a Noun, Verb, or other Adverb, expresses some Circumstance, Quality or Manner of their Signification.

Adverbs denoting CIRCUMSTANCE are chiefly those of Place, Time, Order.

Adverbs

Adverbs of P L A C E are fivefold, viz. Adverbs signifying Motion,		Adverbs of T I M E are threefold viz. such as signify,	
Ubi? Where?		(1) Being in Time, either	
Hic,	Here.	Nunc,	Now.
Ilic,		Hodie,	To Day.
Isthic,		Tunc,	
Ibi,		Tum,	
lotus,	Within.	Heri,	
Foris,	Without.	Dudum,	
Ubique,	Every where.	Pridem,	
Nusquam,	No where.	Pridie,	The Day before.
Alicubi,	Some where.	Nudius tertius,	Three Days ago.
Alibi,	Else where.	Nuper,	Lately.
Ubivis,	Any where.	Jamjam,	Presently.
Ibidem,	In the same Place.	Mox,	Immediately.
Quo?	Whither?	Statim,	By and by.
Huc,	Hither.	Protinus,	Instantly.
Isthuc,	Whither.	Illico,	Straight Way.
Intro,	To within.	Cras,	To morrow.
Foras,	To without.	Postridie,	The Day after.
Eo,	To that Place.	Perendie,	Two Days hence.
Alio,	To another Place.	Nondum,	Not yet.
Aliquo,	To some Place.	Quando? When?	
Eodem,	To the same Place.	Aliquando,	
Quorum?	Whitherward?	Nonnunquam,	Sometimes.
Verus,	Towards.	Interdum,	
Horsum,	Hitherward.	Semper,	Ever.
Illorsum,	Whitherward.	Nunquam,	Never.
Sursum,	Upward.	Interim,	In the mean time.
Decorsum,	Downward.	Quotidie,	Daily.
Antorsum,	Forward.	(2) Continuance of Time.	
Retrosum,	Backward.	Diu,	Long.
Dextorsum,	To the right hand.	QUAMDIU?	How long?
Sinistrorsum,	To the left hand.	Tamdiu,	So long.
Unde?	From whence?	Jamdiu,	
Hinc,	From hence.	Jamdudum,	Long ago.
Illinc,		Jampridem,	
Isthinc,	From thence.		
Inde,			
Aliunde,	From else where.		
Alicunde,	From some Place.		
Sicunde,	If from any Place.		
Utrinque,	On both Sides.		
Superne,	From above.		
Inferne,	From below.		
Celitus,	From Heaven.		
Funditus,	From the Ground.		
Qua?	Which Way?		
Hac,	This Way.		
Illac,	That Way.		
Isthac,			
Alia,	Another Way.		
(4) from a Place,		1. Indefinite,	
(5) through a Place,		2. Definite,	
(6) by a Place.		3. or in Number.	
		Semel,	Once.
		Bis,	Twice.
		Ter,	Thrice.
		Quater,	Four Times.
			3. Ade-

3. Adverbs of ORDER; as,

- c, Then. Deinceps, *So forth.* Primo, .um, *First.*
- nde, Thereafter. Denuo, *Of new.* Secundo, .um, *Secondly.*
- nce, Henceforth. Denique, *Finally.* Tertio, .um, *Thirdly.*
- o, Moresver. Postremo, *Last.* Quartò, .um, *Fourthly.*

1. The other Adverbs expressing QUALITY, MANNER, &c. are  
Absolute or Comparative.

1. QUALITY; as, Bene, well; male, ill; fortiter, bravely: And innumerable others that come from Adjective Nouns or Participle.
2. CERTAINTY; as, Profectò, certè, sancè, planè, nè, utique, ita, etiam, truly, verily, yes; quidni, why not? omnino, certainly.
3. CONTINGENCE; as, Forte, forsè, fortassis, fors, happily, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.
4. NEGATION; as, Non, haud, not; nequaquam, not at all; neutiquam, by no means; minime, nothing less.
5. PROHIBITION; as, Ne, not.
6. SWEARING; as, Hérclé, pol, edepol, mecastor, by Hercules, by Pollux, &c.
7. EXPLAINING; as, Ut pote, videlicet, scilicet, nimirum, nempe, to wit, namely.
8. SEPARATION; as, Scorsum, apart; separatim, separately; sanguillatim, one by one; viritim, Man by Man; oppidanum, Town by Town, &c.
9. JOINING TOGETHER; as, Simul, una, pariter, together; generaliter, generally; universaliter, universally; plerumque, for the most part.
10. INDICATION or POINTING at; as, En, ecce, lo, behold.
11. INTERROGATION; as, Cur, quare, quamobrem, why, whence? Num, an, whether? Quomodo, què, how? To which add, Ubi, quo, quorum, unde, qua, quando, quamdiu, quoties.
12. EXCESS; as, Valde, maxime, magnopere, summopere, admodum, oppido, perquam, longè, very much, exceedingly; nimis, nimium, too much; prorsus, penitus, omnino, altogether, wholly; magis, more; melius, better; pejus, worse; fortius, more bravely; And optime, best; pessime, worst; fortissime, most bravely; and innumerable others of the Comparative and Superlative Degrees.
13. DEFECT; as, Ferme, ferè, propè, propemodùm, penè, almost; parum, little; paullo, paullulum, very little.
14. PREFERENCE; as, potius, satius, rather; potissimum, præcipe, præsertim, chiefly, especially; imò, yes, nay, nay rather.
15. LIKENESS or EQUALITY; as, Ita, sic, adeo, so; ut, uti, sicut, sicut, velut, veluti, ceu, tanquam, quasi, as, as if; quemadmodum, even as; satis, enough; itidem, in like manner.
16. UNLIKENESS or INEQUALITY; as, Aliter, secus, otherwise; aliqui or aliquin, else; sedum, much more, or much less.
17. ABATEMENT; as, Sensum, paullatim, pedentim, by Degrees, piece-meal; vix, scarcely; negre, hardly, with Difficulty.
18. EXCLUSION; as, Tantum, solum, modo, tantummodo, dumtaxat, demum, only.

NOTE, 1. That ADVERBS seem originally to have been contrived  
pres compendiously in one Word what must otherwise have required  
more ; as, *Sapienter*, wisely, for *cum sapientia* ; *bis*, for *in hoc loco* ; so  
for *in omni tempore* ; *semel*, for *una vice* ; *bis*, for *duabus vicibus* ; *Hec*  
for *Hercules me juvet*, &c. Therefore many of them are nothing else  
than *Adjective Nouns or Pronouns*, having the *Preposition* and *Substantive* in  
itself ; as, *qui*, *et*, *eadem* ; for *ad qua*, *ea*, *eadem [loca]* ; or *cui*, *ei*, *et*,  
*[loco]* ; for of old these Datives ended in *o*. Thus, *qua*, *hac*, *illuc*, &  
plain *Adjectives* in the *Abl.* Sing. *semel*, the Word *via*, a Way, and it  
being understood. Many of them are Compounds ; as, *quonodo*, i. e. *quo n*  
*quoniam modum*, i. e. *ad quem modum* ; *quamobrem*, i. e. *ob quam rem* ;  
*re* ; i. e. *[pro] qua re* ; *quorundam*, i. e. *versus quem [locum]* ; *scilicet*, i. e.  
*licet* ; *videlicet*, i. e. *videre licet* ; *illicet*, i. e. *ire licet* ; *illlico*, i. e. *in*  
*magnopere*, i. e. *magno opere* ; *nimirum*, i. e. *ni [est] mirum*, &c.

NOTE, 2. That of Adverbs of Place, these of the First Kind answer  
Question *ubi* ? the Second to *quod* ? the Third to *quorsum* ? the Fou  
rth to *quando* ? and the Fifth to *qua* ? To which might be added a Sixth, *Quo*  
How far ? answered by *Usque*, until ; *Huc* hither, *hitherto* ; *Eousque*, to  
*Hactenus*, hitherto, thus far ; *Eatenus*, so far as ; *Quadantenus*, in  
measure. But these are equally applied to *Place* and *Time*.

NOTE, 3. That Adverbs of Time of the first Kind answer to *qua*  
the Second to *quamdiu*, and *quandidum* or *quampridem* ? of the Th  
ird to *modo* ?

NOTE 4. That Adverbs of Quality generally answer to the Question  
*modo* ?

NOTE, 5. That some Adverbs of Time, Place and Order, are frequent  
the one for the other ; as *Ubi*, where and when ; *inde*, from that Place  
that Time, thereafter, next ; *hactenus*, thus far, with respect to Place,  
or Order, &c. Other Adverbs also may be classed under different Heads.

NOTE, 6. That some Adverbs of Time are either past, present or fu  
ture, *Jam*, already, now, by and by ; *Olim*, long ago, sometime hereafter.

NOTE, 7. That Interrogative Adverbs of Time and Place doubled  
the Adjection *cunque* answer to the English Adjection *soever* ; as, *ubi*, *ubi cunque*, wheresoever ; *quoquo* or *quocunque*, whithersoever, &c. A  
similar holds also in other Interrogative Words ; as *quisquis*, or *qui*  
*whosoever* ; *quotquot*, or *quotcunque*, how many soever ; *quantus* or  
*quantuscunque*, how great soever ; *qualis qualis*, or *qualsicunque*, of  
Kind or Quality soever ; *ut ut*, or *utcunque*, however, or howsoever,

## C A P. VI.

## De Præpositione.

I. PRÆPOSITIONES quæ regunt Accusativum,  
sunt viginti octo, viz.

Ad, To.  
Apud, At.  
Ante, Before.

## C H A P. VI.

## Of Præpositione.

THE Prepositions  
govern the Accusative  
are twenty eight, viz.  
Adversus,  
Adversum,  
Contra, } Again  
the  
Com  
Bea

## Part II. Chap. VI. of Preposition. 67

{ On this Side. About. Towards. Without. Between, among. Within. Beneath. Nigh to. For.	Propter, Per, Præter, Penes, Post, Pone, Secus, Secundum, Supra, Trans, Ultra,	For, bârd by. By, through. Besides, except. In the Power of. After. Behind. By, along. According to. Above. On the farther side. Beyond.
---	--	--

Præpositiones quæ re-  
Ablativum, sunt quin-  
, némpe,

{ From. , Without. With. Without the Knowl- edge of. Before.	De, Ex, Pro, Prae, Sine, Tenuis,	Of, concerning. Of, out of. For. Before. Without. Up to.
---	---	---

Hæ quatuor interdum  
tivum, interdum Ab-  
n regunt.

In, into.  
Under.

II. The Prepositions which go-  
vern the Ablative are Fifteen,  
viz.

, Without. With. Without the Knowl- edge of. Before.	Super, Subter,	Above. Beneath.
--	-------------------	--------------------

III. These Four govern some-  
times the Accusative, and some-  
times the Ablative.

POSITION is an indeclinable Word, shewing the Relation of one  
Noun to another.

That *Pone* and *Secus* rarely occurs, and *Prope*, *nigh*; *Usque*, unto;  
about; *Versus*, towards; which are commonly reckoned among the  
governing the Accusative; and *Procul*, far, among those govern-  
ing the Ablative, are Adverbs; and do not govern a Case of themselves; but  
the position ad, which is understood to the first four, and a or ab, to  
To which perhaps may be added *Clam*, which is joined very fre-  
with the Accusative; as, *Clam patre*, or *patrem*; a being understood  
e, and quod ad to the other.

the separate Use of these PREPOSITIONS, there is another Use  
in them, namely, their being put before a vast Number of Nouns, and  
Composition, which creates a great Variety, and gives a peculiar Ele-  
Beauty to the Latin Tongue.

## 68 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

There are five or six Syllables, viz. AM, DI or DIS, RE, SE, CON, which are commonly called *Indseparable Prepositions*, because they are to be found in compound Words: However they generally add something to the Signification of the Words with which they are compounded; thus,

Am,	round about,	ambio,	to surround.
Di,	divello,	to pull asunder.	
Dis,	disfraho,	to draw asunder.	
Re,	relego,	to read again.	
Se,	sepono,	to lay aside.	
Con,	conresco,	to grow together.	

## C H A P. VII.

### Of Interjection.

**A**N INTERJECTION is an indeclinable Word thrown into Discourse to signify some Passion or Emotion of the Mind.

- Some of them express,*
1. JOY; *ae*, Evax, bey, brave, io.
  2. GRIEF; *ae*, Ah, hei, heu, cheu, ab, alass, woes me.
  3. WONDER; *ae*, Pape, Ostranges; Vah, bah.
  4. PRAISE; *ae*, Euge, well done.
  5. AVERSION; *ae*, apage, away, be gone, pby, tifly.
  6. EXCLAIMING; *ae*, Oh, Proh! O.
  7. SURPRISE or FEAR; *ae*, Atar, ha, aba.
  8. IMPRECACTION; *ae*, Vae, wo, pox on't.
  9. LAUGHTER; *ae*, Ha, ha, he.
  10. SILENCING; *ae*, Au, 't, pax, Silence, hush, 't.
  11. CALLING; *ae*, Echo, io, ho, fo bo, bo, O.
  12. DERISION; *ae*, Hui, away with.
  13. ATTENTION; *ae*, Hem, hab.

NOTE, 1. That the same Interjection denotes sometimes one Passion, sometimes another; as, *Vah*, which is used to express Joy, and sometimes Wonder, &c.

NOTE, 2. That some of them are natural Sounds, common to all Languages.

NOTE, 3. That Nouns are used sometimes for Interjections; as, *M. With a Pox!* *With a Mischief!* *Infandum!* *O shame!* *fy, fy!* *M. O wretched! Nefas!* *O the Villany!*

INTERJECTION is a compendious way of expressing a whole Sentence in one Word; and used only to represent the Passions and Emotions of the Soul, that the Shortness of the one might the sooner express the Suddenness and Quickness of the other.

## C H A P. VIII.

### Of Conjunction.

**A**CONJUNCTION is an indeclinable Word that joins Sentences together; and thereby shews their Dependence upon one another.

Of these some are called,

**EOPULATIVE**; *as*, Et, ac, atque, que, *and*; etiam, quoque, item, sed, tum, cum, both, *and*. Also their *Contraries*, Nec, neque, nev, neve, asun*der*, nor.

**DISJUNCTIVE**; *as*, Aut, ve, vel, seu, sive, either, or. *against*. **ONCESSIVE**; *as*, Etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, licet, quanquam, quamvis *side*, *together*, albo', albeit.

**DIVERSATIVE**; *as*, Sed, verum, autem, at, ast, atqui, but; tamen, amen, veruntamen, verumenimvero, yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless. **AUSAL**; *as*, Nam, namque, eom, for; quia, quippe, quoniam, *use*; quod, that, because.

**ALATIVE or RATIONAL**; *as*, Ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque, before; quapropter, quocirca, wherefore; proinde, therefore; cum, am, seeing, since; quandoquidem, forasmuchas.

**FINAL or PERFECTIVE**; *as*, Ut, uti, that, to the end that.

**CONDITIONAL**; *as*, Si, si, if; dum, modo, dummodo, provided, Condition that; siquidem, if indeed.

**EXCEPTIVE or RESTRICTIVE**; *as*, Ni, nisi, unless, except.

**IMINITIVE**; *as*, Saltem, certe, at least.

**USPENSIVE or DUBITATIVE**; *as*, An, anne, num, whether; non, whether, not; necne, or not.

**XPLETIVE**; *as*, Autem, vero, now, truly; quidem, equidem, ed.

**ORDINATIVE**; *as*, Deinde, thereafter; denique, finally; insuper, moreover; ceterum, moreover, but, however.

**DECLARATIVE**; *as*, Videlicet, scilicet, nempe, nimurum, &c. to namely.

*v. 1.* That the same Words, as they are taken in different Views, are Adverbs and *Conjunctions*; as, *An*, *anne*, &c. are *Suspensive Conjunctions* and *Interrogative Adverbs*. The same may be said of the *Ordinative Conjunctions*, which under another View may be ranked under *Adverbs of Order* and *Explaining*. So likewise *Utinam*, which is commonly called an *Adverb of Wishing*, when more narrowly considered, is nothing but the *Conjunction Ut* [that] with the Syllable *nam* added to it, *[I wish] understood*; as, *Utinam adfuisse*; *Ut te Deus male perapple Opto*. But since both of them are indeclinable, there is no great difficulty in distinguishing them.

*v. 2.* That other Parts of Speech compounded together, supply the *Conjunctions*; as, *Postea*, afterwards; *praterea*, moreover; *propter*, cause, &c. Which are made up of the *Prepositions post*, *prater*, and *with ea* the *Pronoun*.

*v. 3.* That some *Conjunctions*, according to their natural ORDER, stand in a Sentence; as, *Et, aut, nec, si*, &c. Some, contrary to their Order, stand in the second Place, viz. *Autem, vero, quoque, quidem*. And some may indifferently be put either first or second, viz. *Nam-nim, siquidem, ergo, ideo, itaque, &c.* Hence arose the Division into *Preposutive, Subjunctive and Common*.

## C H A P. IX.

**APPENDIX**, containing some Observations concerning the various Divisions and Significations of Words, especially *Noun* and *Verb*.

1. **A LL** Words whatsoever are either *Simple* or *Compound*. A SIMPLE Word [*Simplis*] is that which was never more than one; as, *buss*, *lego*. A COMPOUND [*Compositum*] is that which is made up of more Words, or of a Word and some Syllatical Adjective; as, *littera*, *perlego*, *derelingo*, *egomet*.

2. All Words whatsoever are either *Primitive* or *Derivative*. A PRIMITIVE Word [*Primitivum*] is that which comes from no other Word; as, *Justus*, *lego*. A DERIVATIVE [*Derivativum*] is that which comes from another Word; as, *Justitia*, *lectio*.

I. Besides the more general Divisions of *Nouns* and *Pronouns*, mentioned, there are other particular Divisions of them taken from various Significations and Derivations: The most remarkable whereof are these;

## I. With respect to Signification.

1. A COLLECTIVE [*Collectivum*] is a Substantive Noun which signifies many in the singular Number; as, *Populus*, a People's *exercitus* Army.

2. An INTERROGATIVE Noun or Pronoun [*Interrogativum*] by which we ask a Question; as, *Quis?* Who? *Uter?* which of the *Qualis?* of what kind? *Quantis?* How great? *Quot?* How many? These, when they are used without a Question, are called INDEFINITE.

3. A RELATIVE Noun or Pronoun [*Relativum*] is an Adjective which has respect to something spoken before; as, *Qui*, *ille*, *ipse*, &c. *Ater*, *resquies*, *catera*, *-num*, *qualis*, *quantus*, &c.

4. A PARTITIVE Noun or Pronoun [*Partitivum*] is an Adjective which signifies many severally, and as it were one by one; as, *Omnis*, *nullque*, &c. or a Part of many; as, *Quidam*, *aliquis*, *neuter*, *nemus*, &c.

5. A NUMERAL Noun [*Numerale*] is an Adjective which signifies Number, of which there are four principal Kinds:

(1.) CARDINAL, [*Numerus Cardinalis*]; as, *Uens*, *duo*, *tre*, &c.

(2.) ORDINAL, [*Ordinalis*]; as, *Prima*, *secunda*, *tertius*, &c.

(3.) DISTRIBUTIVE, [*Distributivus*]; as, *Singuli*, *bini*, *terti*, &c.

(4.) MULTIPLICATIVE, [*Multiplicativus*]; as, *Simplex*, *duplex*, &c.

## II. With respect to Signification and Derivation.

1. A PATRONYMICK Noun [*Patronymicum*] is a Substantive derived from another Substantive Proper, signifying one's Pedigree or Line; as, *Briamides*, the Son of *Briamus*; *Pramis*, the Daughter of *Pramus*; *Earias*, the Daughter of *Ereus*; *Nerine* the Daughter of *Nerius*. Patronymicks are generally derived from the Name of the Father. Poets (but otherwise seldom use them) derive them also from the Grand父 of a Nation or People, and also from Countries and Cities; as, the Son, Grand son, Great Grand son, or one of the Posterity of *Europa*, *Asculata*, the *Romans*, from their first King *Romulus*; *Sicilis*, *Tar-*

## Part II. Chap. IX. of Appendix, &c. 71

of Sicily, of Troy, &c. Patronymicks of Men end in *des*; of Women *as* and *ne*. These in *des* and *ne* are of the First, and these in *is* and the Third Declension.

An ABSTRACT Noun [*Abstratum*] is a Substantive derived from an Adjective expressing the Quality of that Adjective in general, without regard to the Thing in which the Quality is; as, *Bonitas*, Goodness; *Dulcedo*, Sweetness; from *bonus*, good; *dulcis*, sweet. With respect to these Abstracts, the Adjectives from which they come are called CONCRETES, because, besides the Quality, they also confusedly signify something as the Subject, without which they cannot make Sense.

A GENTILE or PATRIAL Noun [*Gentile* or *Patrium*] is an Adjective derived from a Substantive Proper, signifying one's Country; as, *Scotus*, Scot; *Arpinus*, *Edimburgensis*, *Taodunanus*; a Man born in Scotland, Arpinia, Arpinum, Edinburgh, Dundee; from *Scotia*, *Macedonia*, *Ar-* *Edimburgum*, *Taodunum*.

A POSSESSIVE Noun [*Possessivum*] is an Adjective derived from a Substantive whether Proper or Appellative, signifying Possession or Property; *Scoticus*, *Herculus*, *Paternus*, *Herilis*, *Fæminus*, of or belonging to Land, Hercules, a Father, a Master, a Woman; from *Scotia*, *Her-* *Pater*, *Herilis*, *Fæmina*.

A DIMINUTIVE Noun [*Diminutivum*] is a Substantive or Adjective derived from another Substantive or Adjective respectively, importing a Diminution, or lessening of its Signification; as *Libellus*, a little Book; *Chartula*, little Paper; *Opusculum*, a little Work; from *liber*, *charta*, *opus*: *lucus*, very little; *Candidulus*, pretty white; from *parsus*, *candidus*. For the most part end in *lus*, *la*, or *lum*, and are generally of the Gender with their Primitives.

A DENOMINATIVE Noun [*Denominativum*] is a Substantive or Adjective derived from another Noun; as, *Gratia*, Favour; *Vinea*, a Vine; *Senator*, a Senator; from *gratus*, *vinum*, *senex*; *Cælestis*, heavenly; *humans*, humane; *Aureus*, golden; from *caelum*, *bomo*, *aurum*.

A VERBAL Noun [*Verba*] is a Substantive or Adjective derived from Verbs; as, *Amor*, Love; *Doctrina*, Learning; *Letio*, a Lesson; *Auditus*, Hearing; from *amo*, *doceo*, *lego*, *audio*; *Amabilis*, lovely; *Capax*, capable; *velocius*, swift; from *amo*, *capio*, *volo*.

Lastly, There are some Nouns derived from *Participles*, *Adverbs* and *Adpositions*; as, *Fictitius*, counterfeit; *Crastinus*, belonging to the Morrow; *irius*, contrary; from *fictus*, *cras*, *contra*.

That the same Nouns, according to the different Respects in which they are considered, may sometimes be ranked under one, and sometimes under another of the above-mentioned Classes; as, *Quis* is an *Interrogative*, *Relative* or *Partitive*; *Pietas*, an *Abstract* or *Denominative*.

Nouns are divided into four Classes, viz.

1. MONSTRATIVES, *Ego*, *tu*, *sui*.

2. ELATIVES, *Ille*, *ipse*, *ille*, *hic*, *is*, *quis*, *qui*.

3. POSSESSIVES, *Mens*, *tuum*, *suis*, *noster*, *vestris*.

4. GENTIALS or GENTILES, *Nobis*, *vestras*, *enjas*.

Of them also two are INTERROGATIVES, *Quis* & *cuja*.

1. Verbs with respect to their Figure or Frame, are either SIMPLE; as, *I love*; Or, COMPOUND; as *Redamo*, *I love again*.

## 72 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

2. With respect to their Species or Origine, are either PRIMITIVE *Lego*, I read : or DERIVATIVE ; as, *Locutio*, I read frequently.

3. With respect to their Conjugation, are either REGULAR ; as, *Amo* ; or IRREGULAR ; as, *Volo*, *vis*, &c.

4. With respect to their Constituent Parts, are either COMPLETE *Amo* ; or DEFECTIVE ; as, *Inquam* : or REDUNDANT ; as, *edis*, & *es*, &c.

5. With respect to their Persons, are either PERSONAL ; as, *I* or IMPERSONAL ; as *Poenitet*.

6. With respect to their Terminations, they end either in O ; as, *A* or in R ; as, *Amor* ; or in M ; as, *Sum*.

7. With respect to their Signification, Verbs are either Substantive Adjective.

(1.) A SUBSTANTIVE Verb [Substantivum] is that which signifies simply the Affirmation of Being or Existence ; as, *Sum*, *fio*, *existo*, *I*.

(2.) An ADJECTIVE Verb [Adjectivum] is that which, together with the Signification of Being, has a particular Signification of its own *Amo* : i. e. *Sum amans*, I am loving.

An Adjective Verb is divided into Active, Passive and Neuter.

[1.] An ACTIVE Verb [Activum] is that which affirms Action or Person or Nominative before it ; as, *Amo*, *loquor*, *curro*.

[2.] A PASSIVE Verb [Passivum] is that which affirms Passion or Person or Nominative before it ; as, *Amor*.

[3.] A NEUTER Verb [Neutrum] is that which affirms neither Action nor Passion of its Nominative ; but simply signifies the State, Posture, Quality of Things ; as, *Sto*, *seden*, *mancio*, *auro*, *vireo*, *flavesc*, *sapi*, *ejo*, &c. To stand, sit, stay, endure, to be green, to be yellow, to be red.

An Active Verb is again divided into Transitive and Intransitive.

[1.] An Active TRANSITIVE Verb [Transitivum] is that which Action passeth from the Agent to some other Thing ; as, *Amo patrem*.

[2.] An Active INTRANSITIVE Verb [Intransitivum] is that which Action passeth not from the Agent to any other ; as, *Curro*, I run ; as, *I walk*.

When to any Verb you put the Question WHOM? or WHAT? if a rational Answer can be returned, the Verb is Transitive ; as, *Whom*, or *do you teach?* Answ. *A Boy*, the Grammar. If not, it is Intransitive. *What do you run, go, come, live, sleep, &c.* To which no rational Answer can be given, unless it be by a Word of like Signification, which some indeed these Verbs have after them ; as, *Vivo vitam jucundam*, I pleasant Life ; *Eo iter longum*, I go a long Journey.

NOTE, 1. That the same Verb is sometimes Transitive, and sometimes Intransitive ; as, *Ver incipit*, the Spring begins, *Cic.* *Incipere facio* begin an Action, *Plaut.*

NOTE, 2. That Neuter and Intransitive Verbs are often Englished by the Signs of a passive Verb ; as, *Calso*, I am hot ; *Palleo*, I am pale ; *bus abiit*, James is gone.

NOTE, 3. That Neuter and Intransitive Verbs want the Passive, unless impersonally used, as the Intransitive Verbs most frequently apparently are ; as, *pugnatur*, *itur*, *ventum est*.

Tho' all Verbs whatsoever, with respect to their Signification, belong to some one or other of the foregoing Classes, yet because Grammarians

## Part II. Chap. IX. of Appendix, &c. 73

TIVE  
er with the Signification of Verbs, are obliged also to consider their Termination, and finding that all Active Verbs did not end in *s*, neither all Passives in *or*, it was judged convenient to add to the former, two or three other Classes or Kinds of them, viz. *Deponent*, *Common* and *Neuter-passive*.

LETE  
[1.] A DEONENT Verb [*Deponens*] is that which has a Passive Termination, but an Active or Neuter Signification; as, *Loquor*, I speak; *mōtor*, I die.

[2.] A COMMON Verb [*Commune*] is that which under a Passive Termination has a Signification either Active or Passive; as, *Criminor*, I accuse, *I am accused*; *Vixi*, I think, or I am thought worthy.

[3.] A NEUTER PASSIVE [*Neutro-passivum*] is that which is half Active and half Passive in its Termination, but in its Signification is either wholly Passive; as, *Fio*, *fætus sum*, to be made. Or wholly Active or Neuter; as, *Auden*, *auns*, *sum*, to dare; *gandeo*, *gavisus sum*, to rejoice.

8. To omit the other Kinds of Derivative Verbs, which are not very material, there are three kinds of them derived from Verbs, which deserve to be remarked, viz. *Frequentatives*, *Inceptives* and *Desideratives*.

[1.] FREQUENTATIVES [*Verba frequentativa*] signify Frequency of Action. They are formed from the last Supine, by changing *atu* into *am* from Verbs of the first; and *u* into *o* from Verbs of the other three Conjugations. They are all of the first; as, *Clamito*, to cry frequently, from *clamo*; *dormito*, to sleep often, from *dormio*. From them also are formed other frequentatives; as, *Curro*, *curso*, *curfito*; *jacio*, *jacto*, *jactito*; *pello*, *pulso*, *pulpto* and *pulto*.

[2.] INCEPTIVES [*Verba inceptiva*] signify that a Thing is begun and leading to Perfection. They are formed from the second Person Sing. Pres. od. by adding *co*. They are all of the Third Conjugation, and want both Preterite and Supine; as, *Caleo*, *cales*, *calesco*, I grow or wax warm.

[3.] DESIDERATIVES [*Verba desiderativa*] signify a Desire of Action. They are formed from the last Supine by adding *rio*. They are all of the fourth Conjugation, and generally want both Preterite and Supine; as, *Cocitario*, I desire to sup; *Esurio*, I am hungry, or I desire to eat.

9. Lastly, In Construction, Verbs receive Names from their more particular Significations; as *Vocative Verbs*, or *Verbs of naming*, *Verbs of reme-  
ring*, *of want*, *of teaching*, *of accusing*, &c.

---

In the preceding Division of Verbs, with respect to their Signification, I have receded a little from the common Method; and in particular I have given a different Account of Neuter Verbs from that commonly received by Grammarians, who comprise under them all Intransitive Verbs, tho' their Significations be never so much Active. But this I did partly from the Reason of the Name, which imports a Negation both of Action and Passion, and partly to give a distinct View of the Significations of Verbs, without regard to their Terminations, which in that respect are purely accidental and arbitrary.

I have also excluded from the Divisions of Verbs those called NEUTRAL PASSIVES [Lat. *Neutra passiva*] because originally they are Active Verbs; as, the primary Signification of *vapulo*, is *pereo* or *ploro*; of *exulo*, extra *sum eo*; of *veneo*, *venum eo*; of *nubo*, *velo*. *Liceo* indeed is a very singular Verb, for in the Active Voice it signifies passively, and in the Passive actively.

**PARS TERTIA.** PART THIRD.  
**De Sententiis, sive** Of Sentences, or  
 Oratione.

**S**ENTENTIA est quæ-  
vis animi cogitatio, dua-  
bus aut pluribus vocibus si-  
mul junctis enunciata; ut,  
*Tu legis; Tu legis libros; Tu*  
*legis libros bonos; Tu legis*  
*libros bonos domi* (a).

## Speech.

**A** SENTENCE is any Thought of the Mind ex-  
press by two or more Words put  
together; as, You read; You  
read Books; You read good  
Books; You read good Book  
at home.

C A P. I.  
**De Syntax, sive Con-**  
 structione.

**S**YNTAX est regula vo-  
cum in Oratione Com-  
positio.

Ejus partes sunt duæ, Con-  
cordantia & Regimen (b).

C H A P. I.  
 Of Syntax, or Con-  
 struction.

**S**TNTAX is the right  
ordering of Words in  
speech.

Its Parts are two, Concord  
and Government.

Concor-

(a) We are now arrived at the principal Part of Grammar; for the great End of Speech being to convey our Thoughts unto others, it will be of little Use to us to have a Stock of Words, and to know what Changes can be made upon them, unless we can also apply them to Practice, and make them answer the great Purposes for which they are intended. To the Attainment of this End there are two Things absolutely necessary, viz. I. That in Speech we dispose and frame our Words, according to the Laws and Rules established among those whose Language we speak. II. That in like manner we know what is spoken or written, and be able to explain it in due Order, and resolve it into the several Parts of which it is made up. The first of these is called SYNTAX or CONSTRUCTION, and the second is named EXPOSITION or RESOLUTION. The first shew us how to speak the Language ourselves; and the second, how to understand it when spoken by others. But it must be owned, that there is such a necessary Connexion between them, that he that is Master of the first cannot be ignorant of the second.

(b) Note, 1. That the Difference between Concord and Government con-  
sists chiefly in this, that in Concord there can no Change be made in the Acci-  
dents, that is, Gender, Case, Number or Person of the one, but the like  
Change must also be made in the other: But in Government, the first Word  
(if declinable) may be changed, without any Change in the second. In Con-  
cord, the first Word may be called the Word directing, and the second the

Conco-  
dictio  
in quib  
Regis  
regit c  
I. D  
C  
1. A  
tivo.  
2. V  
vo.  
3. R  
dente.  
4. S  
stantiv  
R  
A Djel  
Su  
numer  
a Vi  
a Fe  
b D

Word di  
the secu

Note

noted th

ters [a]

Directio

Governm

Words

[a] Num

the Que

to it t

discover

Note

stanzie

Hous k

Note

underst

if it we

sad Th

## Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 73

D.  
O  
any  
l ex-  
s pu-  
You  
good  
book  
  
M  
ight  
in  
ord  
cor-  
—  
great  
little  
made  
swe-  
this  
in we-  
ed a-  
now  
olve  
alled  
ITI-  
page  
But  
heim,  
con-  
like  
Word  
Com-  
the

Concordantia est quando una dictio concordat cum altera in quibusdam accidentibus.

Regimen est quando dictio regit certum casum.

Concord is when one Word agrees with another in some Accidents.

Government is when a Word governs a certain Case.

### I. De Concordantia.

C oncordantia est quadruplices.

1. *Adiectivi cum Substantivo.*

2. *Verbi cum Nominativo.*

3. *Relativi cum Antecedente.*

4. *Substantivi cum Substantivo.*

### REGULA I.

A djecitivum concordat cum Substantivo in genere, numero & casu; ut,

a *Vir* <sup>b</sup> *bonus.*

a *Femina* <sup>b</sup> *casta.*

b *Dulce* <sup>a</sup> *pomum.*

### I. Of Concord.

C oncord is fourfold.

1. Of an Adjective with a Substantive.

2. Of a Verb with a Nominative.

3. Of a Relative with an Antecedent.

4. Of a Substantive with a Substantive.

### RULE I.

A djecitivus agrees with a Substantive in Gender, Number and Case; as,

A good Man.

A chaste Woman.

A sweet Apple.

REG.

Word directed: In Government the first is called the *Word governing*, and the second the *Word governed*.

NOTE 1. That for the greater Ease both of Master and Scholar, we have noted these Words wherein the Force of each Example lieth, with the Letters <sup>[a]</sup> and <sup>[b]</sup>; the Word *Directing* or *Governing* with <sup>[a]</sup>, and the Word *Directed* or *Governed* with <sup>[b]</sup>; or where there are two Words *Directing* or *Governing*, the first with <sup>[a]</sup>, and the second with <sup>[aa]</sup>; and where two Words *Directed* or *Governed*, the first with <sup>[b]</sup>, and the second with <sup>[bb]</sup>.

Number 1. Note, 1. That the way to find out the *Substantive* is to ask the Question WHO, or WHAT? to the *Adjective*; for that which answers to it is the *Substantive*. And the same Question put to the *Verb* or *Relative*, discovers the *Nominative* or *Antecedent*.

Note 2. That another *Adjective* sometimes supplies the Place of a *Substantive*; as, *Amicus certus*, A sure Friend; *Bona ferina*, Good Venison, *Homo* being understood to *Amicus*, and *Caro* to *Ferina*.

Note, 3. That the *Substantive* THING [Nominis] is most frequently understood; and then the *Adjective* is always put in the Neuter Gender, as if it were a *Substantive*; as, *Triste*, [supple Negotium] i. e. Res tristis; A sad Thing. *Bona*, [supple Negotia] i. e. Res bona; Good Things.

## REG. II.

**V**ERBUM concordat  
cum Nominativo ante  
se in numero & persona; ut,  
a Ego <sup>b</sup> lego.  
a Tu <sup>b</sup> scribis.  
a Praeceptor <sup>b</sup> docet.

## RULE II.

A VERB agrees with the  
Nominative before it in  
Number and Person; as,  
I read.  
You write.  
The Master teacheth.

## ANNOTATIONS.

3. 1. VERBA Substanti-  
va, Vocandi & Gestus ha-  
bent utrinque Nominati-  
vum ad eandem rem perti-  
nentem; ut,

b Ego <sup>a</sup> sum <sup>bb</sup> discipulus.  
b Tu <sup>a</sup> vocaris <sup>bb</sup> Joannes.  
b Illa <sup>a</sup> incedit <sup>bb</sup> Regina.

4. 2. EXCEP. Infiniti-  
vus Modus Accusativum an-  
te se habet; ut,

Gaudeo <sup>b</sup> te <sup>a</sup> valere.

1. Substantive Verbs, Verbs  
of Naming and Gesture have  
a Nominative both before and  
after them, belonging to the  
same thing; as,

I am a Scholar.  
You are named John.  
She walks [as] a Queen.

2. EXCEP. The Infinitive  
Mood has an Accusative before  
it; as,

I am glad that you are well.

## 3. ESSE

Num. 2. NOTE, That the Infinitive Mood frequently supplies the Place  
of the Nominative; as, Mentiens non est meum, To lie is not mine, [or my  
Property.]

Num. 3. 1. Substantive Verbs are *Sum*, *fio*, *forem* and *existo*.

2. Verbs of Naming are these Passives, *Appellor*, *dico*, *vocor*, *nominor*,  
*nuncupor*; to which add, *Videor*, *existimor*, *vereor*, *confitimor*, *salutor*, *designo*, &c.

3. Verbs of Gesture are, *Eo*, *incedo*, *venio*, *cubo*, *sto*, *sedeo*, *evado*, *su-  
gio*, *dormio*, *sonnio*, *mancio*, &c.

NOTE, That any Verb may have after it the Nominative, when it belongs  
to the same thing with the Nominative before it; as, *Audiri hoc puer*; I  
heard it being, [or when I was] a Boy. *Defendi Rempublicam adolescens*, non  
deseram senes; I defended the Commonwealth [when I was] a young Man,  
I will not desert it [now that I am] old, Cic.

Num. 4. NOTE, That when the Particle THAT [in Lat. QUOD, or  
UT] comes between two Verbs, it is elegantly left out, by turning the No-  
minative Case into the Accusative, and the Verb into the Infinitive Mood;  
as, *Aiunt Regem adventare*; They say [that] the King is coming; Rather  
than, *Aiunt quod Rex adventat*. *Turpe est os qui bene natus sit turpiter vi-  
vere*; 'Tis a shameful thing that they who are well born should live basely;  
Rather than, *Ut ii turpiter vivant*. See p. 43.

### Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 77

3. **ESSE** habet eundem  
casum post se quem ante se;  
ut,

b Petrus **cupit** <sup>a</sup> esse <sup>bb</sup> vir  
doctus.

Scio <sup>b</sup> **Pescum** <sup>a</sup> esse <sup>bb</sup> vi-  
rum doct.

b Mibi <sup>b</sup> negligenti <sup>a</sup> esse  
non licet.

#### R E G. III.

\* **RELATIVUM** Qui,  
qua, quod, concordat  
cum Antecedente in genere  
& numero; ut,

a Vir sapit <sup>b</sup> qui pauca lo-  
quitur.

4. Si nullus interveniat No-  
minativus inter Relativum  
& Verbum, Relativum erit  
verbō Nominativus; ut,

3. **ESSE** habet the same  
Case after it that it hath be-  
fore it; as,

Peter desires to be a learn-  
ed Man.

I know that Peter is a  
learned Man.

I am not allowed to be  
negligent.

#### R U L E U.

**THE Relative** Qui, quæ,  
quod, agrees with the  
Antecedent in Gender and  
Number; as,

He is a wise Man who  
speaks little.

1. If no Nominative comes  
between the Relative and the  
Verb, the Relative shall be the  
Nominative to the Verb; as,

Præ-

Num. 5. Note, 1. That we frequently say, *Licet nobis esse bonos*; We  
may be good. *Tibi expedit esse sedulū*; 'Tis expedient for you to be di-  
lent. *Nemini unquam nocuit fuisse pium*; It never hurted any Man that he  
had been pious: But then the Accusative, *Nos, te, illum*, &c. is understood  
thus, *Licet nobis [nos] esse bonos*, &c.

Note, 2. That if *Eſſe*, and the other Infinitives of Substantive Verbs,  
Verbs of Naming, &c. have no Accusative or Dative before them, the Word  
that follows (whether Substantive or Adjective) is to be put in the Nomi-  
nativus; as, *Dicitur esse vir*; He is said to be a Man. *Non videtur esse sagi-  
us*; He seems not about to do it. *Nemo debet dici beatus ante suum obi-  
tum*; No Man should be called happy before his Death.

Num. 6. Note, 1. That the Antecedent is a Substantive Noun that goes  
before the Relative, and is again understood to the Relative. Wherefore it  
will not be amiss to teach the Scholar to supply it every where; thus, Be-  
ware of Idleness, which [Idleness] is an Enemy to Virtue. Cave segnitiam,  
us [Segnitas] est inimica virtuti. Nay Cicero himself, but especially Ca-  
esar, frequently repeat the Substantive; as, *In oppidum perfunisti, quo in  
opido, &c.* You fled to a Town, in which Town, Cic. *Diem dicunt, quo in  
te ad ripam Rhodani convenient*, They appoint a Day, on which Day  
they should meet upon the Bank of the River Rhone, *Cas*.

Note, 2. That when the Relative respects a whole Sentence, it is put in  
the Neuter Gender; as, *Joannes mortuus est, quod mibi summo dolori est*; John  
is dead, which is a great Grief to me.

Note, 3. That the Person of the Relative is always the same with that  
of its Antecedent; as, *Ego qui doceo*; I who teach. *Tu qui disceis*; You  
who learn. *Leglio qua docetur*; The Lesson which is taught.

*Præceptor* <sup>a</sup> *qui* <sup>b</sup> *docet.*

8. 2. At si interveniat Nominativus inter Relativum & Verbum, *h* Relativum erit ejus *casus*, *uem* Verbum aut Nomen sequens, vel Præpositio præcedens regere solent;

*Deus* <sup>b</sup> *quem* <sup>b</sup> *colimus.*

<sup>b</sup> *Cujas* <sup>a</sup> *munere vivimus.*

<sup>b</sup> *Cui nullus est* <sup>a</sup> *similis.*

<sup>a</sup> *A* <sup>b</sup> *quo facta sunt omnia.*

The Master who teacheth.

2. But if a Nominative come between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative shall be of that Case, which the Verb or Noun following, & the Preposition going before it, use to govern; as,

God whom we worship.

By whose Gift we live.

To whom there is none like.

By whom all things were made.

### A N N O T A T I O.

9. ¶ Duo vel plura Substantiva singularia Conjunctione [&, ac, atque, &c.] copulata, habent Adjectivum, Verbum vel Relativum plurale; ut,

<sup>a</sup> *Petrus* <sup>b</sup> *et* <sup>a</sup> *Ioannes* <sup>b</sup> *qui*

<sup>b</sup> *sunt* <sup>b</sup> *dotti.*

Two or more Substantives Singular coupled together with a Conjunction [&, ac, atque &c.] have a Verb, Adjective or Relative plural; as,

Peter and John who are learned.

### R E G . IV

*Num.* 9. *Note*, 1. That when the Substantives are of different Genders the Adjective or Relative plural must agree with the Masculine rather than the Feminine or Neuter; as, *Pater & mater qui sunt mori*, The Father and Mother who are dead.

*EXCEP.* But if the Substantives signify things without Life, the Adjective, or Relative plural, must be put in the Neuter Gender; as, *Dicitur deus, gloria in oculis sita sunt*; Riches, Honour and Glory are set before your Eyes.

*Note* 2. That when two or more Nominatives are of different Persons the Verb plural must agree with the First Person, rather than the Second; and the Second, rather than the Third; as, *Sicut & Tullia valetis, ego & Ciceron valemus*; If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well.

*Note* 3. That the Adjective or Verb frequently agree with the Substantive or Nominative that is nearest them, and are understood to the rest; as, *Et ego in culpa sum & tu*, Both I and you are in the Fault: Or, *Et ego & tu es in culpa*. *Nihil hic deest nisi carmina*, There is nothing here wanting but Charms; or, *Nihil hic nisi carmina defunt*. This manner of Construction is most usual, when the different Words signify one and the same thing or much to the same Purpose; as, *Mens, ratio & confidimus in sensibus et in Understanding, Reason and Prudence is in old Men.*

*Note* 4. That Collective Nouns, because they are equivalent to a Plural Number, have sometimes the Adjective or Verb in the Plural Number; as, *Partes virginis casu*, A part of them were scourged. *Turba ruit*; The Crowd ran.

R E G. IV.

J NUM Substantivum concordat cum alio eandem significante in casu; ut,  
 a Cicero b Orator.  
 a Urbs b Edimburgum.  
 a Filius b dulicis matris sue (a).

R U L E IV.

O NE Substantive agrees with another signifying the same thing in Case; as, Cicero the Orator. The City Edinburgh. A Son the Darling of his Mother.

II. De Regimine.

R EGIMEN est triplex,  
 1. Nominum.  
 2. Verborum.  
 3. Vocum indeclinabilium.

O F Government.

G OVERNMENT is threefold,  
 1. Of Nouns.  
 2. Of Verbs.  
 3. Of Words indeclinable.

REGIMENT Nominum.

§ 1. Substantivorum.

R E G. I.

J NUM Substantivum regit aliud rem diversum significans in Genitivo;  
 a Amor b Dei.  
 a Lex b Naturae.

I. The Government of Nouns.

§ 1. Of Substantives.

R U L E I.

O NE Substantive governs another signifying a different thing in the Genitive; as,

The Love of God.

The Law of Nature.

A N N O T A T I O N E S.

\* 1. Si posterius Substantivum adjunctum habet adjectivum prae-

1. If the last Substantive have an Adjective of Praise  
beat

(4) To these four Conords some add a Fifth, viz. that of the Response, being with its Interrogative in Case; as, *Quis dedit tibi pecuniam?* Pater. Who gave you Money? My Father. *Quo cares?* Libro. What do you mean? A Book. But this ought not to be made a principal Rule; For the genitive, or the Word that answers the Question, does not depend upon Interrogative, but upon the Verb, or some other Word joined with it; which, because spoken immediately before, is generally understood in the Answer; thus, *Quis dedit tibi pecuniam?* Pater [dedit mihi pecuniam.] *Quo cares?* [Careo] libro.

Num. 11. NOTE, 1. That OF or 's is the ordinary sign of this Genitive, NOTE, 2. That the Relative Pronouns *eius*, *illius*, *cuius*, &c. Englished, her, its, their, thereof, whereof, whose, have their Substantives generally understood; as, *Liber eius*, (*supple Horumis*, *Famis*, &c.); His Book or her book. *Libri eorum*, (*supple hominum*, *seminarium*, &c.) Their Books.

## 80 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

beat Adjectivum laudis vel  
vituperii, in Genitivo vel  
Ablativo peni potest; ut,

a *Vir* b *summæ* b *prudentiæ*,  
vel b *summā* b *prudentiā*.  
a *Puer* b *probæ* b *indolis*,  
vel b *probā* b *indole*.

13 \* 2. Adjectivum in neu-  
tro genere absque Substan-  
tivo rēgit Genitivum; ut,

a *Multum* b *pecunia*.  
a *Quid* b *rei*?

or Dispraise joined with it,  
may be put in the Genitive  
Ablative; as,

A Man of great Wisdom

A Boy of a good Dispo-  
sition.

2. An Adjective in the No-  
ter Gender without a Substa-  
tive governs the Genitive;

Much Money.

What is the Matter?

### S 2. Adjectivorum.

#### R E G. I.

14 \* ADJECTIVA ver-  
balia vel affectio-  
nem animi significantia  
Genitivum postulant; ut,

a *Avidus* b *gloriæ*.  
a *Ignarus* b *fraudis*.  
a *Memor* b *beneficiorum*.

### S 2. Of Adjectives.

#### R U L E I.

VERBAL Adjectives,  
such as signify an Affec-  
tion of the Mind require the Ge-  
nitive; as,

Desirous of Glory.

Ignorant of Fraud.

Mindful of Favours.

#### R E G.

Num. 13. This is more elegant than *Multa pecunia*; *Quares*?

NOTE, 1. That these Adjectives which thus govern the Genitive, as they were Substantives, are generally such as signify Quantity; as, *Multa*, *quantum*, *plus*, *plurimum*.

NOTE, 2. That *Plus* and *Quid* always govern the Genitive, and upon Account are by many thought real Substantives.

Num. 14. To this Rule belong,

1. Adjectives of DESIRE; as, *Cupidus*, *ambitus*, *avarus*, *studiosus*.

2. Of KNOWLEDGE; as *Peritus*, *gnarus*, *prudens*, *candidus*, *pi-  
dus*, *doctus*, *docilis*, *prascius*, *pragrus*, *certus*, *memor*, *eruditus*, *expe-  
tans*, *consultus*, &c.

3. Of IGNORANCE; as, *Ignarus*, *rudis*, *imperitus*, *nescius*, *in-  
siderius*, *dubius*, *auxinus*, *sollitus*, *immemor*.

4. Of GUILT; as, *Conscius*, *convictus*, *manifestus*, *suspectus*, *reus*.

5. Verbs in AX and NS; as, *Edax*, *capax*, *ferax*, *fugax*, *tenax*, *pe-  
cator*: And *Amans*, *cupiens*, *appetens*, *patiens*, *fugiens*, *sitiens*, *negligens*,

6. To which may be referred, *Æmulus*, *muniens*, *parcus*, *prodigus*,  
*fusus*, *segnis*.

# Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 81

## R E G . II.

D A R T I T I V A & partitive posita, Comparative, Superlative, Interrogative & quædam Numeralia Genitivo pluraliter; ut,  
Aliquis<sup>b</sup> Philosophorum.  
Senior<sup>b</sup> fratrum.  
Doctissimus<sup>b</sup> Romanorum.  
Quis<sup>b</sup> nostrum?  
Una<sup>b</sup> Musarum.  
Octavus<sup>b</sup> sapientum.

## R E G . III.

D E C T I V A significativa commodum vel ita modum, similitudinem dissimilitudinem, re Dativum; ut,  
Utilis<sup>b</sup> bello.  
Perniciosus<sup>b</sup> Reipublicæ.  
Similis<sup>b</sup> patri.

## R U L E II.

P A R T I T I V E S and Words<sup>a</sup> plac'd partitively, Comparatives, Superlatives, Interrogatives and some Numerals govern the Genitive plural; as,

Some one of the Philosophers.  
The elder of the Brothers.  
The most learned of the Romans.  
Which of us? [mans.  
One of the Muses.  
The Eighth of the wise Men.

## R U L E III.

A D J E C T I V E S signifying Profit or Disprofit, Likeness or Unlikeness, govern the Dative; as,

Profitable for War.  
Pernicious to the Commonwealth.  
Like his Father. (wealth.)

F q Ver-

15. Note, 1. That 'tis easy to know when this Rule takes place, giving the Genitive into Inter with the Accus. or de, e, ex, with the Optimus Regum, The best of Kings, i. e. Optimus inter Reges, or ex Regibus.

2. That when there are two Substantives of different Genders, the one, &c. rather agrees with the first than the last; as, Indus fluminum, Cic. Leo animalium fortissimus, Plin. Otherwise it is of the same with the Substantive it governs; as, Panca animalium. Unaquaque rum.

3. That Partitives, &c. take the Genitive singular of Collective and do not necessarily agree with them in Gender; as, Praefiantissima civitatis, Cic. Nympharum sanguinis una, Virg.

16. Note, 1. That some of these Adjectives govern also the Genitives, Amicis, inimicis, sociis, viciniis, par, aqualis, similis, dissimilis, communis, &c.

2. That Adjectives signifying Motion or Tendency to a Thing, rather the Accusative with AD, than the Dative; such as, Proclivus, propensus, velox, caler, tardus, piger, &c. as, Ei piger ad penas Princeps, ad præmia velox, Ovid.

3. That Adjectives signifying Fitness, or the contrary, may have them; as, Aptus, ineptus bello, or ad bellum.

## 82 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

17 ♀ Verbalia in BILIS & DUS regunt Dativum; ut,  
 • Amandus vel • amabilis <sup>b</sup> omnibus.

Verbals in BILIS and DUS govern the Dative; as,  
 To be beloved of all Men.

### R E G. IV.

18\* ADJECTIVA dimensionem significantia regunt Accusativum mensuræ; ut,  
 Columna sexaginta <sup>b</sup> pedes <sup>a</sup> alta.

R U L E IV.  
**ADJECTIVES** signify Dimension govern the Accusative of Measure; as,

A Pillar sixty Foot high.

### R E G. V.

19\* COMPARATIVUS regit Ablativum, qui resolvitur per QUAM; ut,  
 • Dulcior <sup>b</sup> melle.  
 • Praestantior <sup>b</sup> auro.

R U L E V.  
**T H E Comparative Degree** governs the Ablative, which is resolved by Quam; as, Sweeter than Honey. Better than Gold.

### R E G. VI.

20\* DIGNUS, Indignus, Contentus, Præditus, Captus & Fretus: Item Natus, Satus, Ortus, Editus,

R U L E VI.  
**T H E S E Adjectives,** gnus, Indignus, Contentus, Præditus, Captus & Fretus: Also Natus, Satus, Ortus, Editus.

*Num. 17.* OF or BY is the ordinary Sign of this Dative.

*Note.* That Particles of the *Preter Tense*, and *Passive Verbs* also, cially among the Poets, have frequently the *Dative*, instead of the *Ablative*; as, *Nullus eorum mihi visus est*, None of them was seen me; *Non audior ulli*, I am not heard by any.

*Num. 18.* The *Adjectives* of **DIMENSION** are, *Altus*, high or *crassus*, or *densus*, thick; *latus*, broad; *longus*, long; *profundus*, deep. The Names of **MEASURE** are, *Digitus*, an Inch; *palmus*, an Handbreadth; a Foot; *Cubitus*, a Cubit; *uncia*, an Ell; *passus*, a Pace, &c.

*Note.* 1. That Verbs signifying Dimension likewise have the Accusative of Measure; as, *Fatet tres uinas*, It is three Ells large, Virg.

*Note.* 2. That sometimes the Word of Measure is put in the *Ablative*; as, *Fatto sex cubitis alta*, *dudicata lata*, *Liv. Venter ejus extat seque Pers.* And sometimes but rarely in the *Genitive*; as, *Nec longiores num pedum*, Plinio.

*Num. 19.* Let the following Examples be observed and imitated: *meliors*, Much better. *Nibile peior*, Nothing worse. *Major solito*; *Caris, a W* than usual. *Quo diligenter es, eo doctior evades*; The more diligent you are, the more learned you will become. *Quanto superbior, tanto vitor* prouder, the less worth. *Nihil Virgilio doctius*; There is none wort elegant than Virgil.

similia, Ablativum per  
ant; ut, <sup>a</sup>  
<sup>a</sup> Dignus <sup>b</sup> honore.  
<sup>a</sup> Prædictus <sup>b</sup> virtute.  
<sup>a</sup> Contentus <sup>b</sup> parvo.  
<sup>a</sup> Captus <sup>b</sup> oculis.  
<sup>a</sup> Fretus <sup>b</sup> viribus.  
<sup>a</sup> Ortus <sup>b</sup> regibus.

R E G. VII.

DJECTIVUM copia  
aut inopia regit Geniti-  
m vel Ablativum; ut,  
<sup>a</sup> Plenus <sup>b</sup> ira vel <sup>b</sup> ira.  
<sup>a</sup> Inops <sup>b</sup> rationis.

REGIMENTUM Verborum.

§ 1. Personalium.

R E G. I.

S U M quoties possessionem, proprietatem aut  
cium significat, regit Ge-  
tivum; ut,

*Est b Regis punire rea-  
belles.*

*Inspiciens a est dicere, non  
putaram.*

*Militum a est suo duci pa-  
re.*

¶ Excipiuntur hi No-  
nati, Meum, tuum,

Ortus, Editus, and the like,  
require the Ablative; as,

Worthy of Honour.

Endued with Virtue.

Content with little.

Blind.

Trusting to his Strength.

Descended of Kings.

R U L E VII.

A N ADJECTIVE of Pleasure  
ty or Want governs the  
Genitive or Ablative; as,  
Full of Anger.  
Void of Reason.

II. The Government of Verbs.

§ 1. Of Personal Verbs.

R U L E I.

S U M, when it signifies  
Possession, Property or  
Duty, governs the Geni-  
tive; as,

It belongs to the King  
to punish Rebels.

It is the Property of a Fool  
to say, I had not thought.

It is the Duty of Soldiers  
to obey their General.

¶ These Nominatives, Me-  
tim, tuum, suum, nostrum, ve-

F 2 subiect,

Num. 1. Note, 1. That *Dilectus*, *gravidus*, *resertus*; and *orbis*, *vacuus*, choose rather the Ablative: *Indicus*, *compos* and *impos* the Genitive.  
Note, 2. That some comprehend *Opus* and *Ufus*, when they signify Need, under this Rule; as, *Quid opus est verbis?* What Need is there of words? *Ovid. Nunc viribus usus*, Now there is Need of Strength, Virg. But to be remarked that these are Substantive Nouns, the very same with *Opus*, a Work, and *Ufus*, a Use; and have the Ablative after them, because of the Preposition IN, which is understood. Sometimes *Opus* hath the Nominative by Num. 3. as, *Dux nobis opus est*, We stand in need of a Leader. elegantly joined with the Participle Perfect; as, *Consulto, maturato, is-  
os factos*; &c. *opus est*; We must advise, make haste, find out, do, &c.

## 84 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

*suum, nostrum, vestrum; ut,  
b Tuum<sup>a</sup> est id procurare.*

### R E G . II.

24 \* **MISEREOR**, *miser-  
esco & satago re-  
gunt Genitivum; ut,  
a Miserere b civium tuo-  
rum.  
a Satagit b rerum suarum.*

### R E G . III.

25 **E ST** pro *habeo* regit  
Dativum personæ;  
ut,  
a Est b mibi liber.  
a Sunt b mibi libri.

### R E G . IV.

26 **S UM** pro *affero* regit  
duos Dativos, unum  
personæ, alterum rei; ut,  
a Est mibi b voluptati.

### R E G . V.

27 **V ERBUM** significans  
commodum vel incom-  
modum regit Dativum; ut,  
a Fortuna<sup>a</sup> favet b fortibus.  
b Nemini<sup>a</sup> noceas.

strum, are excepted; as,  
It is your duty to manage the

### R U L E II.

**MISEREOR**, *miseresco, am-  
bitus;* *satago govern the Ge-*

*tive; as,* *Take pity on your Coun-*

*men.* [how

*He hath his Hands full*

### R U L E III.

**E ST** taken for *habeo*  
have] governs the Da-  
of a Person; as,

*I have a Book.*

*I have Books.*

### R U L E IV.

**S UM** taken for *affero*  
bring] governs two Dati-  
the one of a Person, and  
other of a Thing; as,

*It is a Pleasure to me.*

### R U L E V.

**A** Verb signifying Advan-  
or Disadvantage gov-  
the Dative; as,

*Fortune favours the br-*

*Do hurt to no Man.*

*Num. 23.* To these last may be added Possessive Nouns, such as, *Rum, humanum, bellum, et cetera;* and the like; as, *Humanum est errare,* It is in-  
to Man to err.

*Note.* That to all these are understood *Officium, opus, negotium,* or  
other Words to be gathered from the Sentence; as, *Me Pompeii totu-  
scis,* You know that I am wholly Pompey's, or in Pompey's Interest, *Ci-  
amicum, sautorum,* or the like.

*Num. 25.* This is more elegant than, *Habeo librum,* or *habeo libros.*  
So *Desum* is used elegantly for *Careo;* as, *Desum mibi libri,* for *Can-  
bris,* I want Books.

*Num. 26.* Note, That other Verbs, such as, *Do, duco, verto, tribuo,*  
*beo, relinquuo, &c.* may have two Datives; as, *Hoc tibi landi datur,*  
are praised for this. *Ne mibi vitio vertas,* Do not blame me.

To this may be referred such Expressions as these, *Est mibi nomen Io-*  
*My Name is John;* Which is more elegant than, *Est mibi nomen Jo-*  
*or Joannis.*

*Num. 27.* This is a very general Rule, and (when we signify a thing)

## Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 85

### R E G. VI.

ERBUM active significans regit Accusati-

Ama <sup>b</sup> Deum.

Reverere <sup>b</sup> parentes.

Recordor, memini, remi-

or & obliviscor regunt Ac-

tivum vel Genitivum;

Recordor <sup>b</sup> lectionis vel  
<sup>b</sup> lectionem.

Obliviscor <sup>b</sup> injuria vel  
<sup>b</sup> injuriam.

### R U L E VI.

A VERB signifying actively<sup>28</sup>  
governs the Accusative ;

as,  
Love God.

Reverence your Parents.

Recordor, memini, remi-<sup>29</sup>  
niscor and obliuiscor govern  
the Accusative or Genitive ;

as,  
I remember my Lesson.

I forget an Injury.

F 3 V E R.

quired to any Person or Thing) almost common to all Verbs. But in a particular manner are comprehended under it,

1. To PROFIT or HURT ; as, *Commido, proficio, placebo, consilio, noceo, officio.* But *Ledo* and *offendo* govern the *Accus.*

2. To FAVOUR, to HELP, and their contraries ; as, *Faveo, anno, arrideo, assentior, adstipular, gratulor, ignosco, indulgeo, parco, adulor, plauso, blandior, lenocinor, palpor, fideo, supplico, &c.* Also *Auxilior, adminiculor, subuenio, succurro, patrocinor, medior :* Also *Derogo, detrabo, invideo, &c.* But *Juveo* has the *Accus.*

3. To COMMAND, OBEY, or RESIST ; as, *Impero, praecipio, mando : Pareo, servio, obedio, obsequor, obtempero, morem gerio, morigeror, famular : Pugno, repugno, certo, obfio, reluctor, renitor, resisto, advertor, refragor, &c.* But *Jubeo* governs the *Accus.*

4. To THREATEN or be ANGRY with ; as, *Minor, indignor, irafror, succensio.*

5. To TRUST ; as, *Fido, confido, credo.*

Verbs compounded with SATIS, BENE, and MALE ; *Satisfacio, be-*

*o, benedico, maleficio, maledico.*

The Compounds of the Verb SUM ; *sum, profsum, obsum.*

Verbs compounded with these ten PREPOSITIONS, *Ad, ante, con-*

*ter, ob, post, pra, sub and super ; as, 1. Adsto, accumbo, acquisisco, af-*

*adhareo, admoveo. 2. Antecello, anteo, antevertio. 3. Consono,*

*seco, condono, consumor. 4. Illudo, immorior, inhareo, insideo, in-*

*unior, invigilo, incumbo. 5. Interpono, interuenio, interfero. 6. Ob-*

*obstrecto, occupo. 7. Postpono, posthabeo. 8. Praeo, praestat for ex-*

*praluceo. 9. Succedo, submitto, subjicio. 10. Supersto, supervenio.*

RE, 1. That TO, the Sign of the Dative, is frequently understood.

RE, 2. That TO is not always a Sign of the Dative, for 1. Verbs of

Motion ; as, *Eo, venio, proficior : And 2. These Verbs, Provo, in-*

*vitio, bortor, specto, pertineo, attineo, and such like, have the Accu-*

*sative with the Preposition ad.*

RE, 28. Note, That Neuter and Intransitive Verbs have sometimes an

accusative after them. 1. Of their own or the like Signification ; as, *Vivere*

*, Gaudere gaudium, Sistere sanguinem, Olera hircum.* 2. When ta-

*ken in a Metaphorical Sense ; as, Arabat Alexia, i. e. Vehementer amabat.*

**VERBA** *Adiva alium unde  
cum Accusativo consumere.*

- 30 \* 1. **VERBA** accusandi, damnandi & absolvendi, cum Accusativo personæ regunt etiam Genitivum criminis; ut,  
 a Arguit b me bb furti.  
 b Meipsum bb inertiae a condemnno.  
 b Illum bb homicidii a absolvunt.

- 31 2. Verba comparandi, dandi, narrandi & ause rendi, regunt Dativum cum Accusativo; ut,

**Active VERBS** governing another Case together with the Accusative.

1. **VERBS** of *Accusing, Condemning and Acquitting*, with the Accusative of the Person govern also the Genitive of the Crime; as,

He accuses me of Theft. I condemn my self of L

ziness. They acquit him of Ma

- slaughter, 2. **VERBS** of Comparing, Giving, Declaring and Taking away, govern the Dative and the Accusative; as,

Num. 30. 1. Verbs of ACCUSING are, *Accuso, ago, appello, arguo, alligo, astringo, deferro, inciso, insimulo, postulo, &c.*

2. Verbs of CONDEMNING are, *Damno, condemnno, convinco, &c.*

3. Verbs of ABSOLVING are, *Solvo, absolvoo, libero, purgo, &c.*

NOTE, 1. That the Genitive may be changed into the Ablative, either with, or without a Preposition; as, *Purgo te bac culpa, or de bac culpa* clear you of this Fault. *Eum de vi condonnavit;* He found him guilty a Riot, Cic.

NOTE, 2. That the Genitive, properly speaking, is governed by some relative understood, such as, *Crimine, pena, actione, causa;* as, *Accus furti, i.e. criminis furti. Condemnare capitum, i.e. penam capitum.*

NOTE, 3. That *Crimine, pena, actione, capite, morte,* scarcely admit of a Preposition.

Num. 31. 1. To Verbs of COMPARING belong also Verbs of *Pr* rining or postponing.

2. To Verbs of GIVING belong Verbs of Receiving, promising, paying, sending, bringing.

3. To Verbs of DECLARING belong Verbs of Explaining, shewing, naming, &c.

4. Verbs of TAKING away are, *Ausero, adimo, eripio, eximo, detrapio, detraho, tollo, extilio, extorquo, arceo, defendo, &c.*

NOTE, 1. That many of these Verbs govern the Dative by Num. 31.

NOTE, 2. That innumerable other Verbs may have the Dative with Accusative, when together with the thing done is also signified the Person thing to, or for whom it is done; as, *Doce mihi filium,* Teach me my Son; *cau mihi hanc rem,* Take care of this Affair for me.

NOTE, 3. That *Comparo, confero, compono,* have frequently the Ablative with *cum.*

## Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 87

- a *Comparo b Virgilium bb Homer.*
- b *Suum bb cuique a tribuito.*
- a *Narras b fabulam bb surdo.*
- a *Eripuit b me bb morti.*
- \* 3. *VERBA rogandi & docendi duos admittunt Accusativos, priorem personam, et posteriorem rei; ut,*
- a *Posce b Deum bb veniam.*
- a *Docuit b me bb Grammaticam.*

I compare Virgil to Homer.

Give every Man his own.  
You tell a Story to a deaf Man.

He rescued me from Death.

3. *VERBS of Asking and Teaching* admit of two *Accusatives*, the first of a Person, and the second of a thing; as,

Beg Pardon of God.  
He taught me Grammar.

### A N N O T A T I O.

The *Passives* of such Active Verbs as govern two Cases, do still retain the last of them; as,

I am accused of Theft.  
Virgil is compared to Homer.

I am taught Grammar.

### R U L E VII.

THE Price of a Thing is governed in the Ablative by any Verb; as,

F 4      a Emi

Num. 32. Note, 1. That among the Verbs that govern two *Accusatives* are also reckoned these following;

1. *CELO*; as, *Cela banc rem uxorem*, Conceal this from your Wife, Plant. But we can say also, *Celo te de hac re*, and *Celotibi hanc rem*.

2. Verbs of *CLOTHING*; as, *Induit se calicos*, He put on his Shoes. But these have more commonly the *Ablative* of the thing without a Preposition; as, *Vestit se purpura*, He cloaths himself with Purple. *Induo* and *Exuo* have frequently the Person in the Dative, and the thing in the *Accusative*; as, *Tboracem sibi induit*, He put on his Breast-plate.

3. *MONEO*; as, *Id usum te moneo*, I put you in mind of this one thing. But, unless it is some general Word, [as, *Hoc, illud, id, &c.*] *Moneo, admoneo, commonefacio*, have either the *Genitive*; as, *Admoneo te officii*, I put you in mind of your Duty: Or the *Ablative* with *de*; as, *De hac re te sapienter admonui*, I have frequently warned you of this.

NOTE, 2. That Verbs of Asking often change the *Accusative* of the Person into an *Ablative* with the Preposition; as, *Oro, exoro, peto, postulo tecum a te*; I intreat this of you: Some always; as, *Contendo, queror, scitor, scicitor* *te a te*. Finally, some have the *Accusative* of the Person, and the *Ablative* of the thing with *de*; as, *Interrogo, consulio, perconterio de hac re*.

## 88 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

<sup>a</sup> Emi librum <sup>b</sup> duobus affibus.

<sup>a</sup> Vendidit hic <sup>b</sup> europatriam.  
Demosthenes <sup>a</sup> docuit <sup>b</sup> ta. lento.

35 \* Excipiuntur hi Geniti, Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris; ut,  
<sup>b</sup> Quantus <sup>a</sup> constitit?  
Affe & <sup>b</sup> pluris.

36 \* VERBA estimandi regunt hujusmodi Genitivos, Magni, parvi, nihil, &c. ut,  
<sup>a</sup> Estimo te <sup>b</sup> magni.

### R E G. VIII.

37 \* VERBA copiae & inopie plerumque Ablativum regunt; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Abundat <sup>b</sup> divitiis.

<sup>a</sup> Caret omni <sup>b</sup> culpa.

38 \* Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, regunt Ablativum; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Utitur <sup>b</sup> fraude.

<sup>a</sup> Abutitur <sup>b</sup> librī.

I bought a Book for two Shillings. [for Gold. This Man sold his Country Demosthenes taught for a Talent.

These Genitives, Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, are excepted; as,

How much cost it?

A Shilling and more.

VERBS of valuing govern such Genitives as these, Magni, parvi, nihil, &c. as,

I value you much.

### R U L E V I I I.

VERBS of Plenty and Scarce- ness for the most part govern the Ablative; as,

He abounds in Riches.

He has no Fault.

Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor; govern the Ablative; as,

He uses Deceit.

He abuses Books.

### § 2. Re-

Num. 35. Note, That if the Substantives be expressed, they are put in the Ablative; as, *Quanto pretio?* Minore mercede.

Num. 36. 1. Verbs of Valuing are, *Estimo*, *pendo*, *facio*, *babeo*, *duco*, *puto*, *toco*.

2. The rest of the Genitives are, *Minoris*, *minimi*, *tanti*, *quanti*, *pluris*, *majoris*, *plurimi*, *maximi*, *nanci*, *flocci*, *pili*, *affis*, *teruncis*, *bujus*: Also *Aequand* *boui* after *facio* and *consulo*.

Note, 1. That we say also, *Estimo magno*, *parvo*, *supple pretio*.

Note, 2. That *Alvarus* excludes *majoris*, as wanting Authority. But there is an Example of it to be found in *Phaedrus* II. 5. 25.

*Multo majoris alapa mecum veneant.*

Num. 37. Sometimes they have the Genitive; as, *Eget aris*, He wants Money, Hor. *Implentur veteris Bacchi*, They are filled with old Wine, Virg.

Note, That Verbs of Loading and Unloading, and the like, belong to this Rule; as, *Navis oneratur mercibus*, The Ship is loaded with Goods. *Levabo te hoc onere*, I will ease you of this Burden. *Liberavit nos metu*, He delivered us from Fear.

Num. 38. To these Verbs add *Nitor*, *gandeo*, *muto*, *dono*, *munero*, com-

P  
§ 2. Reg

per

V E R B A

reg

<sup>a</sup> Exp

<sup>a</sup> Lic

\* E

Interest

lant;

<sup>a</sup> Ref

<sup>a</sup> Inte

\* At

tra, v

Accusa

Non

\* E

que, M

det, re

Accusa

Geniti

<sup>a</sup> Mi

<sup>a</sup> Pa

<sup>a</sup> Ta

\* E

tuor, I

oportet,

vum p

VO; ut

unico,

prosequor

Note

To get i

Num.

bet, libe

teficit, &

ter them

Num.

tive; as

the follo

2. Regimen Verborum *In personalium.*

R E G. IX.

VERBUM Impersonale regit Dativum; ut,  
 a *Expedit* b *Reipublica.*  
 a *Licit* b *nemini peccare.*  
 \* EXCEP. 1. *Refert* &  
*Interest* Genitivum postu-  
 lant; ut,  
 a *Refert* b *patriis.*  
 a *Interest* b *omnium.*  
 \* At *Mea, tua, sua, no-*  
*stra, vestra, ponuntur in*  
*Accusativo plurali;* ut,  
 Non b *mea* a *refert.*  
 \* EXCEP. 2. *Hæc quir-*  
*que, Miseret, pænitet, pu-*  
*det, tædet & piget regunt*  
*Accusativum personæ, cum*  
*Genitivo rei;* ut,  
 a *Miseret* b *me* b *tui.*  
 a *Pænitet* b *me* b *peccati.*  
 a *Tædet* b *me* b *vita.*  
 \* EXCEP. 3. *Hæc qua-*  
*tuor, Decet, delectat, juvat,*  
*oportet, regunt Accusati-*  
*vum personæ cum Infiniti-*  
*vo;* ut,

§ 2. The Government of  
 Impersonal Verbs.

R U L E IX.

A *n Impersonal Verb governs* 39  
 the Dative; as,

*It is profitable for the State.*

*No Man is allowed to sin.*

*EXCEP. 1. Refert and In 40*  
*terest require the Genitive;*  
 as,

*It concerns my Father.*

*It is the Interest of all.*

*But Mea, tua, sua, nostra, 41*  
*vestra, are put in the Accusa-*  
*tive Plural;* as,

*I am not concerned.*

*EXCEP. 2. These five, Mi-42*  
*seret, pænitet, pudet, tædet,*  
*and piget, govern the Accusa-*  
*tive of a Person with the Ge-*  
*nitive of a Thing;* as,

*I pity you.*

*I repent of my Sin.*

*I am weary of my Life.*

*EXCEP. 3. These four, De-43*  
*cet, delectat, juvat, opor-*  
*tet, govern the Accusative of*  
*the Person with the Infinitive;*  
 as,

a *Dele-*

*nuncio, visito, beo, fido, impetrō, dignor, nascor, creor, affitio, confio,*  
*prosequor, &c.*

NOTE, That *Potior*, sometimes governs the *Genitive*; as, *Potiri hostium*,  
 To get his Enemies into his Power. *Potiri verum*, To have the chief Rule.

Num. 39. Such as these, *Accidit, contingit, evenit, conductit, expedit, lu-*  
*bet, libet, licet, placet, displicet, vacat, restat, praefiat, liquet, nocet, dolet,*  
*sufficit, &c.* Together with the Dative they have commonly an Infinitive af-  
 ter them, which is supposed to supply the place of a Nominative before them.

Num. 42. NOTE, That this *Genitive* is frequently turned into the *Infinitive*;  
 as, *Pænitet me peccasse;* *Tædet me vivere;* and so they fall in with  
 the following Rule.

## 90 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

<sup>a</sup> Delectat b me bb studere.  
Non <sup>a</sup> deceat b te bb rixari.

**S. 2. REGIMENT.** Infinitivū, Participiū, Gerundio-  
rum & Supinorū.

### R E G. X.

**44 U** N U M Verbū regit  
aliud in Infinitivo; ut,  
<sup>a</sup> Cupio b discere.

### R E G. XI.

**45 P A R T I C I P I A**, Gerundia  
& Supina regunt Casum  
suorum verborum; ut,  
<sup>a</sup> Amans b virtutem.  
<sup>a</sup> Carens b fraude.

#### 1. G E R U N D I A.

**46 1. G E R U N D I U M** in  
D U M Nominativi  
Casus cum verbo [est] re-  
git Dativum; ut,  
<sup>a</sup> Vivendum est b mibi recte.  
<sup>a</sup> Moriendum est b omnibus.

**47 2. G e r u n d i u m** in D I re-  
gitur à Substantivis vel  
Adjectivis; ut,  
<sup>a</sup> Tempus b legendi.  
<sup>a</sup> Cupidus b discendi.

I delight to study.  
It does not become you to scold

**S. 3. The GOVERNMENT**  
of the Infinitive, Participles,  
Gerunds and Supines.

### R U L E X.

**O** NE Verb governs another in  
the Infinitive; as,  
I desire to learn,

### R U L E XI.

**P A R T I C I P L E S**, Gerunds and  
Supines govern the Case of  
their own Verbs; as,  
Loving Virtue.  
Wanting Guile.

### G E R U N D S.

**1. T H E G E R U N D** in D U M  
of the Nominative Case  
with the Verb [est] governs the  
Dative; as,  
I must live well.  
All must die.  
**2. T h e G e r u n d** in D I is go-  
verned by Substantives or Ad-  
jectives; as,  
Time of reading.  
Desirous to learn.

### 3. Ge-

**N u m . 43.** Note, That Oportet is elegantly joined with the Subjunctive Mood, UT being understood; as, Oportet facias, [You must do it,] for Oportet te facere.

Actinet, Pertinet and Spectat, when used impersonally, (which rarely happens) have the Accusative with ad, as was observed above, p. 85.

**N u m . 44.** Sometimes it is governed by Adjectives; as, Cupidas &c cupiebas discere.

Note, That the Verb Capit or caperunt is sometimes understood; as Omnes mihi inviderunt; supple caperunt, They all began to envy me.

**N u m . 46.** This Dative is frequently understood; as, Eundum est, (supple nobis) We must go.

Note, That this Gerund always imports Necessity, and the Dative after it is the Person on whom the Necessity lies.

**N u m . 47. 1.** The Substantives are such as these, Amor, causa, gratia, studium, tempus, occasio, ars, viuum, voluntas, cupido, &c.

**2.** The Adjectives are generally Verbs, mentioned Num. 14.

## Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 91

3. Gerundium in DO Dativi Causis regitur ab Adjectivis utilitatem vel aptitudinem significantibus; ut,

*Charta a utili scribendo.*

4. Gerundium in D U M Accusativi Causis regitur a Präpositionibus ad vel inter; ut,

*Promptus a ad b audiendum.*

*Attentus a inter b docendum.*

5. Gerundium in DO Ablativi Causis regitur a Präpositionibus, a, ab, de, e, ex, vel in; ut,

*Pena a a b peccando abstinet.*

\* Vel sine Präpositione, ut  
Ablativus Modi vel Causæ; ut,

*Memoria b excolendo a augetur.*

a *Defessus sum b ambulando.*

6. Gerundia Accusativum regentur vertuntur eleganter in Participia in D U S, quæ cum suis Substantivis in Genere, Numero & Casu concordant; ut,

*Petendum est pacem.*

*Tempus petendit pacem.*

3. The Gerund in DO of 48 the Dative Case is governed by Adjectives signifying Usefulness or Fitness; as,

Paper useful for writing.

4. The Gerund in D U M 49 of the Accusative Case is governed by the Prepositions ad or inter; as,

Ready to hear.

Attentive in Time of teaching.

5. The Gerund in DO of 50 the Ablative Case is governed by the Prepositions, a, ab, de, e, ex, or in; as,

Punishment frightens from sinning.

\* Or without a Präposition, as the Ablative of Manner or Cause; as,

The Memory is improved by exercising it.

I am wearied with walking.

6. Gerunds governing the 52 Accusative are elegantly turned into the Participles in D U S, which agree with their Substantives in Gender, Number and Case; as,

Petenda est pax.

Tempus petendit pacis.

Ad

Num. 48. The Adjective of Fitness is often understood; as, Non est solvendo; He is not able to pay, [supple optus or par.]

Note, That sometimes this Gerund is governed by a Verb; as, Epidicūm quadrudo operam dabo, I'll endeavour to find out Epidicus, Plant.

Num. 49. Note, i. That it hath sometimes, but very rarely, the Prepositions ob and ante; as, Ob absolvendū munus, For finishing your Task, Cis. Ante domandū; Before they are tamed or broken, Virg. speaking of Horses.

Note, ii. That what was the Gerund in Dus of the Nominative with the Verb est, fuit, &c. becomes the Accusative with esse; as, Omnibus maritum esse novimus; We know that all must die.

## 92 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

*Ad petendum pacem.*

*A petendo pacem.*

### S U P I N A.

53 \* 1. Supinum in UM poni.  
tur post verbum motus; ut,  
\* *Abiit b deambulatum.*

54 \* 2. Supitium in U ponitur  
post nomen Adjectivum; ut,  
\* *Facile b dittu.*

*Ad petendam pacem.*

*A petenda pace.*

### S U P I N E S.

1. *The Supine in UM is put after a Verb of Motion; as,*  
*He hath gone to walk.*

2. *The Supine in U is put after an Adjective Noun; as,*  
*Easy to tell, or to be told.*

§ 4. Con-

*Num. 52. Add to these the Gerunds of Fungor, fruor and patior.*

*These Particles in DUS are commonly called GERUNDIVES.*

*NOTE, 1. That the Substantive must always be of the same Case that the Gerund was of.*

*NOTE 2. That because of its noisy Sound, the Gerund in di is seldom changed into the Genitive Plural; but either the Accusative is retained; as, Studio patres vestros videndi, rather than Patrum vestrorum videndorum; or it is turned into the Genitive Plural, without changing the Gerund; as, Pa-  
rnum vestrorum videndi studio.*

*Num. 53. The Supine in UM is elegantly used with the Verb Eo, when we signify that one sets himself about the doing of a thing; as, In mea vita tu laudem is quaesumus? Are you going to advance your Reputation at the Hazard of my Life; Ter. And this is the Reason why this Supine, with ieiunum impersonally, supplies the place of the Future of the Infis. Passive.*

### Some general Remarks on the Construction of Participles, Gerunds and Supines.

*NOTE 1. That Participles, Gerunds and Supines have a twofold Construc-  
tion; one as they partake of the Nature of Verbs, by which they govern a certain Case after them; another as they partake of the Nature of Nouns, and consequently are subject to the same Rules with them; Thus,*

*1. A Participle is always an Adjective agreeing with its Substantives, by Num. 1.*

*2. A Gerund is a Substantive, and construed as follows: (1.) That in dum of the Nominative by Num. 2. Of the Accus. by Num. 68. (2.) That in di by Num. 11, or 14. (3.) That in do of the Dat. by Num. 16. of the Ablat. by Num. 69, 71, or 55.*

*3. A Supine is also a Substantive, (1.) That in um, governed by ad understood, by Num. 68. (2.) That in u governed by in understood, by Num. 71.*

*NOTE 2. That the Present of the Infinitive Active, the first Supine and the Gerund in dum, with the Preposition ad, are thus distinguished: The Supine is used after Verbs of Motion; The Infinitive after any other Verbs; The Gerund in dum with ad after Adjective Nouns. But these last are frequently to be met with after Verbs of Motion; and Poets use also the Infinitive after Adjectives.*

*NOTE, 3. That the Present of the Infinitive Passive and the last Supine, are thus distinguished: The Supine hath always an Adjective before it; which the Infinitive hath not, unless among Poets.*

## Part III: Chap. I. of Construction. 93

### § 4. *Constru<sup>tio</sup> CIR<sup>CUM</sup>- STANTIARUM.*

#### 1. *Causa, Modus, & Instru- mentum.*

R E G . XII.

\* CAUSA, Modus & In-  
strumentum ponuntur  
in Ablativo; ut,

- a *Palleo b metu.*
- a *Fecit suo b more.*
- a *Scribo b calamo.*

#### 2. *Locus.*

R E G . XIII.

\* 1. NOMEN oppidi  
ponitur in Ge-

### § 4. The Construction of Circumstances (a).

#### 1. The Cause, Manner and Instrument.

R U L E XII.

THE Cause, Manner and  
Instrument are put in the  
Ablative; as,  
I am pale for Fear.  
He did it after his own way.  
I write with a Pen.

#### 2. Place.

R U L E XIII.

THE Name of a Town<sup>56</sup>  
is put in the Genitive  
nitive

(a) Adjective Nouns, but especially Verbs, have frequently some CIRCUMSTANCES going along with them in Discourse; the most considerable whereof, with respect to Construction, are these Five. 1. The Cause or Reason why any thing is done. 2. The Way or Manner how it is done. 3. The Instrument or Thing wherewith it is done. 4. The Place where. And 5. The Time when it is done.

Num. 55. NOTE, 1. That the CAUSE is known by the Question CUR, or QUARE? Why? Wherefore? &c. The MANNER by the Question QUOMODO? How? And the INSTRUMENT by the Question QUO-CUM? Wherewith?

NOTE, 2. That the Preposition is frequently express with the Cause and Manner; as, *Pro gaudio*, For Joy. *Propter amorem*, For Love. *Ob culam*, For a Fault. *Cum summo labore*, With great Labour. *Per dedecum*, With Disgrace. But the Preposition [CUM] is never added to the Instrument: For we cannot say, *Scribo cum calamo*; *Cum oculis vidi*.

NOTE, 3. But here we must carefully distinguish between the Instrument, and what is called the *Ablativus Comitatus*, or, *Ablative of Concomitancy*, i. e. signifying that something was in Company with another; for then the Preposition [CUM] is generally express; as, *Ingressus est cum gladio*, He entered with a Sword, i. e. having a Sword with him or about him.

NOTE, 4. That to Cause some refer the Matter of which any thing is made; as *Clypeus* are *fabricatus*, A Shield made of Brass: But (except with the Poets) the Preposition is for the most express.

NOTE, 5. That to Manner some refer the *Adjunct*, i. e. something joined to another thing; as, *Terra amara floribus*, A Land pleasant with Flowers. *Mons nive candidus*, A Hill white with Snow.

NOTE, 6. That to Instrument some refer *Conficior dolore*, *invidia*, &c. *Prosequor odio*, *amore*, &c. *Afficio te honeste*, *contumelie*, &c. *Lecego verbis a-  
tritis*, &c.

nitivo cum quæstio fit per  
UBI; ut,  
a Vixit b Romæ.

\* Mortuus est b Londini.

57 \* EXCEP. Si vero fit  
tertiæ Declinationis, aut  
Pluralis Numeri, in Abla-  
tivo effertur; ut,

a Habitat b Carthagine.

a Studuit b Parisis.

58 \* 2 Cum quæstio fit per  
QUO, nomen oppidi in  
Accusativo regitur; ut,

a Venit b Edimburgum.

a Profectus est b Athenas.

59 \* 3. Si quæratur per  
UNDE vel QUA, nomen  
oppidi ponitur in Ablati-  
vo; ut,

a Discessit b Aberdonia.

b Laodicea iter a faciebas.

60 \* 4. Domus & Rus eodem  
modo quo oppidorum no-  
mina construuntur; ut,

Manet domi, He stays at home. Domum revertitur, He  
returns home. Domo accersitus sum, I am called from  
home. Vivit rure or ruri.

61 5. Nominibus regionum,  
provinciarum, & aliorum  
locorum, non dictis, Præ-  
positio fere additur; ut,

UBI? Nasus in Scotia, in Fifa, in urbe, &c.

QUO? Abiit in Scotiam, in Fifam, in [vel ad] urbem, &c.

UNDE? Rediit e Scotia, e Fifa, ex urbe, &c.

QUA? Transit per Scotiam, per Fifam, per urbem, &c.

ANNO.

Num. 56. Sec. Norz, i. That the Preposition is frequently added to  
Names of Towns (especially when the Question is Quo? Unde? or Qua?)  
and sometimes omitted to Names of Countries, Provinces, &c.

A N N O T A T I O.

\* Distantia unius loci ab  
aliо ponitur in Accusativo,  
interdum & in Ablativo;

Glascua <sup>a</sup> distat Edimburgo  
triginta <sup>b</sup> millia passuum.  
<sup>b</sup> Iter vel <sup>b</sup> itinere unius dies.

The Distance of one Place <sup>a</sup>  
from another is put in the Ac-  
cusative, and sometimes in the  
Ablative; as,

Glasgow is thirty Miles di-  
stant from Edinburgh.  
One Day's Journey.

3. Tempus.

R E G. XIV.

1. TEMPUS ponitur  
in Ablativo cum  
quæstio fit per QUANDO;

<sup>a</sup> Venit <sup>b</sup> hora tercia.

\* 2. Cum quæstio fit per  
QUAMDIU, tempus po-  
nitur in Accusativo vel Ab-  
lativo, sed sèpius Accusa-  
tivo; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Manit paucos <sup>b</sup> dies.

Sex <sup>b</sup> mensibus <sup>a</sup> absuit.

3. Time.

R U L E X I V.

1. TIME is put in the Ab-<sup>b</sup>  
lative, when the Que-  
stion is made by QUANDO,  
[When;] as,

He came at three a Clock.

2. When the Question is <sup>a</sup>  
made by QUAMDIU, [How  
long,] Time is put in the Ac-  
cusative or Ablative, but oft-  
er in the Accusative; as,

He staid a few Days.

He was away six Months.

De

Note, 2. That Huius, Militia and Belli are also used in the Genitive  
when the Question is made by Ubi; as, Proculib[er] huius, He lies down on  
the Ground. Domi militaque una fuimus, We were together both at home  
and abroad, or in Peace and War, Ter. Belli domique agitabatur, Was ma-  
naged both in Peace and War, Sallust.

NOTE, 3. That when the Name of a Town is put in the Genitive, it  
is understood, and therefore we cannot say, Natus est Roma urbis nobilis  
but urbe nobili.

¶ These Rules concerning Names of Towns may be thus  
expressed,

The Name of { IN or AT  
Town after { TO or UNTO } } is put { Genit. or Abl. f  
FROM or THROUGH } in the { Accusative, -  
Ablative. }

i. e. When it is of the third Declens. or of the Plur. Number. But when  
it signifies about or near a Place, we make use of the Preposition ad; as;  
eum quod ad Troiam referat, Virg.

Nom. 63 and 64. These two Rules may be thus express'd,

1. Nouns that denote a precise TERM of TIME, are put in the Ablative;
2. Nouns that denote CONTINUANCE of Time, are put in the Accu-  
sative or Ablative.

## 94 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

- nitivo cum quæstio fit per  
**UBI**; ut,  
 a *Vixit* b *Rome.*  
 b *Mortuus est* b *Londini.*
- 57 \* **EXCEP.** Si vero fit  
 tertiae Declinationis, aut  
 Pluralis Numeri, in Abla-  
 tivo effertur; ut,  
 a *Habitat* b *Carthagine.*  
 a *Studuit* b *Parisii.*
- 58 \* 2 Cum quæstio fit per  
**QUO**, nomen oppidi in  
 Accusativo regitur; ut,  
 a *Venit* b *Edimburgum.*  
 a *Profectus est* b *Athenas.*
- 59 \* 3. Si quæratur per  
**UNDE** vel **QUA**, nomen  
 oppidi ponitur in Ablati-  
 vo; ut,  
 a *Discessit* b *Aberdonia.*  
 b *Laodicea iter* a *faciebat.*
- 60 \* 4. **Domus** & **Rus** eodem  
 modo quo oppidorum no-  
 mina construuntur; ut,  
*Manet domi*, He stays at home. *Domum revertitur*, He  
 returns home. *Domo accersitus sum*, I am called from  
 home. *Vrbit rure* or *ruri.* *Abiit rus*. *Rediit rure.*
- 61 5. Nominibus regionum,  
 provinciarum, & aliorum  
 locorum, non dictis, Prae-  
 positio ferè additur; ut,  
**UBI?** *Natus in Scotia, in Fifa, in urbe, &c.*  
**QUO?** *Abiit in Scotiam, in Fifam, in [vel ad] urbem, &c.*  
**UNDE?** *Rediit e Scotia, e Fifa, ex urbe, &c.*  
**QUA?** *Transit per Scotiam, per Fifam, per urbem, &c.*

ANNO.

---

Num. 56. See Note, i. That the Preposition is frequently added to  
 Names of Towns (especially when the Question is *Quo?* *Unde?* or *Qua?*)  
 and sometimes omitted to Names of Countries, Provinces, &c.

A N N O T A T I O.

\* Distantia unius loci ab  
alio ponitur in Accusativo,  
interdum & in Ablativo;

Glasca <sup>a</sup> distat Edimburgo  
triginta <sup>b</sup> millia passuum.  
<sup>b</sup> Iter vel <sup>b</sup> itinere unius dies.

The Distance of one Place <sup>a</sup>  
from another is put in the Ac-  
cusative, and sometimes in the  
Ablative; as,

Glasgow is thirty Miles di-  
stant from Edinburgh.  
One Day's Journey.

3. Tempus.

R E G. XIV.

1. TEMPUS ponitur  
in Ablativo cum  
questio sit per QUANDO;

<sup>a</sup> Venit <sup>b</sup> hora tertia.

\* 2. Cum questio sit per  
QUAMDIU, tempus po-  
nitur in Accusativo vel Ab-  
lativo, sed sapis Accusa-  
tivo; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Manit paucos <sup>b</sup> dies.  
Sex <sup>b</sup> mensibus <sup>a</sup> absuit.

3. Time.

R U L E X I V.

1. TIME is put in the Ab-<sup>b</sup>  
lative, when the Que-  
stion is made by QUANDO,  
[When;] as,

He came at three a Clock.

2. When the Question is <sup>a</sup>  
made by QUAMDIU, [How  
long,] Time is put in the Ac-  
cusative or Ablative, but of-  
ten in the Accusative; as,

He staid a few Days.

He was away six Monthes.

De

NOTE, 2. That Huius, Militia and Belli are also used in the Genitive  
when the Question is made by Ubi; as, Procul huius, He lies down on  
the Ground. Domi militaque una sumus, We were together both at home  
and abroad, or in Peace and War. Ter. Belli domique agitatur, Was ma-  
naged both in Peace and War. Sallust.

NOTE, 3. That when the Name of a Town is put in the Genitive, its  
meaning is understood, and therefore we cannot say, Natus est Roma urbis nobis  
, but urbe nobilis.

¶ These Rules concerning Names of Towns may be thus  
expressed,

The Name of Town after	{ IN or AT TO or UNTO FROM or THROUGH	} is put { Genit. or Abl. if in the { Accusative. Ablative.
---------------------------	---	---

i. e. When it is of the third Declens. or of the Plur. Number. But when  
T signifies about or near a Place, we make use of the Preposition ad; as;  
alium quod ad Troiam generat, Virg.

Num. 63 and 64. These two Rules may be thus express'd;

1. Nouns that denote a precise TERM of TIME, are put in the Ablative;
2. Nouns that denote CONTINUANCE of Time, are put in the Accu-  
sative or Ablative.

*De Ablativo absoluto.*

## R E G. XV.

\* **SUBSTANTIVUM**  
cum Participio, quo  
rum Causa à nulla alia di-  
ctione penderit, ponuntur in  
Ablativo absoluto; ut,

<sup>a</sup> Sole <sup>b</sup> oriente fugiens  
tenebrae.

<sup>a</sup> Opero <sup>b</sup> peracto ludemus.

Of the Ablative Absolute.

## RULE XV.

A **SUBSTANTIVE** with <sup>a b</sup> Participle, whose Case de-  
pends upon no other Word, are  
put in the Ablative absolute;  
as,

The Sun rising [or while  
the Sun riseth] Darkness  
flees away.

Our Work being finished  
[or when our Work is  
finished] we will play.

## III. Constructio Vocabulorum Indeclinabilium.

## 1. Adverbiorum.

\* 1. **ADVERBIA** qua-  
dam temporis,

## III. The Construction of Words Indeclinable.

## 1. Of Adverbs.

1. **SOME** Adverbs of <sup>of</sup> Time, Place and <sup>and</sup> loci

Num. 65. Note, 1. This Ablative is called ABSOLUTE or Independent because it is not directed or determined by any other Word; for if the Substantive (which is principally to be regarded) hath a Word before, that should govern it, or a Verb coming after, to which it should be a Nominative, then the Rule does not take place.

Note, 2. That Having, Being, or a Word ending in ing, are the ordinary Signs of this Ablative.

Note, 3. That (to prevent our mistaking the true Substantive) when Participle perfect is Englished by HAVING, we are carefully to advert whether it is Passive or Deponent. If it is Passive, we are to change it into BEING, its true English. If it is Deponent, there needs no Change, for HAVING is the proper English of it. The Use of this Note will appear by the following Example.

James having said these things, { Jacobus has locutus abiit. Dep.  
departed.

James, these things being said, { Jacobus his dictis abiit. Paff.  
departed.

Having promised a great Reward. { Pollicitus magnam mercedem. De.  
A great Reward being promised. { Magna mercede promissa. Paff.

Note, 4. That when there is no Participle express in Latin, existente [being] is understood; as, *Mi puer*, I being a Boy. *Saturno Rege*, Saturn being King. *Civitate nondum librâ*, The State not being yet free.

Note, 5. That the Participle may be resolved into *Dum*, *cum*, *quando*, *postquam*, &c. [While, seeing, when, if, after] with the Verb; either in English or Latin.

### Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 97

loci & quantitatis regunt Generativum; ut,

\* *Pridie illius b diei.*

\* *Ubique b gentium.*

\* *Satis est b verborum.*

\* 2. Quædam Adverbia derivata regunt Casum primitorum; ut,

\* *Omnium a elegansissime loquuntur.*

*Vivere a convenienter b naturæ.*

#### 2. Praepositionum.

i. PRÆPOSITIONES *Ad*, *apud*, *ante*, &c. Accusativum regunt; ut,

\* *Ad b patrem.*

2. PRÆPOSITIONES *A*, *ab*, *abs*, &c. regunt Ablativum;

\* *A b patre.*

3. PRÆPOSITIONES *In*, *sub*, *per* & *subter*, regunt Accusativum cum motus ad locum before, that significatur; ut,

*Eo a in b scholam.*

\* *Sub b mœnia tendit*, Virg.  
*Incidit a super b agmina*, Id.  
*Dicit a subter b fastigia te-  
sti*, Id.

At si motus vel quies in signifetur, *In* & *sub* regunt Ablativum; *Super* & *Vel* Accusativum vel lativum; ut,

*edeo vel discurre in b scho-*

*edem. De la.*

*ecubo vel ambulo a sub  
existente b umbra.*

*edens a super b arma*, Virg.  
*Fronde a super viridi*, Id.

Quantity governs the Genitive; as,

The day before that day.

Every where.

There's enough of words.

2. Some Derivative Ad-  
verbs govern the Case of their Primitives; as,

He speaks the most elegantly of all.

To live agreeably to Nature.

#### 2. Of Prepositions.

i. THE Prepositions *Ad*, *apud*, *ante*, &c. govern the Accusative; as,

To the Father.

2. The Prepositions *A*, *ab*, *abs*, &c. govern the Ablative; as,

From the Father.

3. The Prepositions *In*, *sub*, *per* & *subter*, govern the Accusative when Motion is a Place is signified; as,

I go into the School.

He goes under the Walls.

It fell upon the Troops.

He brings [bitm] under the Roof of the House.

¶ But if Motion or Rest in it a Place be signified, *In* and *Sub* govern the Ablative; *Super* and *subter* either the Accusative or Ablative; as,

I sit or run up and down in the School.

I ly or walk under the Shadow.

Sitting above the Arms.  
Upon the green Grass.



Vene

*Venæ* <sup>a</sup> *subter* <sup>b</sup> *cutem dis-*  
*persæ*, Plin.

<sup>a</sup> *Subter* <sup>b</sup> *littore*, Catull.

4. ¶ *Præpositio* in compositione eundem sæpe Casum regit quem extra; ut,

<sup>a</sup> *Adeamus* <sup>b</sup> *scholam*.

<sup>a</sup> *Exeamus* <sup>b</sup> *scholâ*.

The Veins dispersed under the Skin.

Beneath the Shoar.

4. A Preposition oftentimes governs the same Case in Composition that it does without it; as,

Let us go to the School.

Let us go out of the School.

3. Inter-

¶ The Prepositions, with the Cases they govern, are contained in these Verses:

1. Hæ quantum adsciscunt Casum sibi Præpositores;  
*Ad*, *penes*, *adversum*, *cis*, *cira*, *adversus*, & *extra*,  
*Ultra*, *post*, *prater*, *juxta*, *per*, *pone*, *secundum*,  
*Erga*, *apud*, *ante*, *seens*, *trans*, *supra*, *propter*, & *intra*,  
*Quis* *addas* *contra*, *circum*, *circa*, *inter*, *ob*, *infra*.

2. Hæ sextum poscunt s. *A*, *cum*, *tenus*, *abs*, *ab*, & *absque*,  
*Atque* *palam*, *pro*, *pra*, *clam*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *sine*, *coram*.

3. *Suo*, *super*, *in*, *subter*, quantum sextumque requirunt.

NOTE, 1. That *Verbus* and *Ususque* are put after their Cases; as, *Italiam* *versus*, Towards Italy; *Oceanum usque*, As far as the Ocean. But (as we have already observed, Page 67.) these are properly *Adverbs*, the *Prepositio* *AD* being understood.

NOTE, 2. That *Tenus* is also put after its Case; as, *Mento tenuis*, Up the Chin.

NOTE, 3. That *Tenus* governs the *Genitive Plural*, 1. When the *Wants* the *Singular*; as, *Cumatum tenuis*, As far as [the Town] Cumæ. When we speak of things of which we have naturally but two; as, *Cru- tenuis*, Up to the Legs.

NOTE, 4. That *A* and *E* are put before *Consonants*, *Ab* and *Ex* before *Vowels* and *Consonants*; *Ab* before *t* and *q*.

NOTE, 5. That *subter* hath very rarely the *Ablat.* and only among Po-

NOTE, 6. That in English IN is commonly the Sign of the *Ablative*, TO of the *Accusative*.

NOTE, 7. IN for *Erga*, *contra*, *per*, *supra*, *ad*, &c. governs the *A-* as, *Amor in patriam*. *Quid ego in te commisi?* *Crescit in dies singulos*. *In perium Regnum in propriis greges*, Horat. *Pisces in canam emti*. But for *inter* governs the *Ablative*; as, *In amicis habere*, Sallust.

SUB for *circum* governs the *Accusat.* as, *sub canam*.

SUPER for *Ultra*, *prater* and *inter*, governs the *Accusat.* as, *Super G-* *mantas*, Virg. *Super gratiam suam*, Sallust. In sermone *super canam* Sust. For *de* it governs the *Ablat.* as, *Super hac re nimis*, Cic.

Numb. 72. NOTE, That this Rule only takes Place when the *Preposi-* may be dissolved from the *Verb*, and put before the *Case* by itself; as, *Loquor patrem*, i. e. *Loquor ad patrem*. And even then the *Prepositio* frequently repeated; as, *Exire & finibus suis*, Cæs.

# Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 99

## 3. Interjectionum.

### \* 1. INTERJECTIONES

O, heu & prob, regunt  
Vocativum, interdum Accu-  
sativum; ut,

\* O formose b puer.

\* Heu b me miserum!

\* 2. Hei & Væ regunt Da-  
tivum; ut,

Hei b mibi!

Væ b vobis.

## 4. Conjunctionum.

### \* 1. CONJUNCTIONES

Et, ac, atque, nec,  
neque, aut, vel, & quædam  
aliae, connectunt similes Ca-  
sus & Modos; ut,

Honora b patrem a S b ma-  
trem.

Nec b scribit, a nec b legit.

2. Ut, quo, licet, ne, uti-  
nam & dummodo Subjunctivo  
Modo ferè semper adhærent;  
ut,

Lego a ut b discam.

a Utinam b saperes.

## 3. Of Interjections.

### 1. THE Interjections O, 73

Heu, and Proh, govern  
the Vocative, and sometimes  
the Accusative; as,

O fair Boy.

Ah Wretch that I am!

2. Hei and Væ govern the 74  
Dative; as,

Ah me!

Wo to you.

## 4. Of Conjunctions.

### 1. THE Conjunctions Et, 75

ac, atque, nec, ne-  
que, aut, vel, and some o-  
thers, couple like Cases and  
Moods; as,

Honour your Father and  
Mother.

Heneither writes nor reads.

2. Ut, quo, licet, ne, uti-  
nam and dummodo are for  
the most part joined with the  
Subjunctive Mood; as,

I read that I may learn.

I wish you were wise.

## G 2 SYN.

Numb. 75. To these add *Quam*, *nisi*, *praterquam*, *an*, and *Adverbs of Likeness*. The Reason of this Construction is because the Words so coupled depend all upon the same Word, which is express to one of them, and understood to the other.

Numb. 76. To these add all *Indefinite Words*, that is, *Interrogatives*, whether *Nouns*, *Pronouns*, *Adverbs* or *Conjunctions*, when taken in a doubtful or indefinite Sense; such as, *Quis*, *uter*, *quantus*, &c. *Ubi*, *quo*, *unde*, &c. *Cur*, *quare*, *quæmōrem*, *num*, *an*, *anne*, &c. (See Page 65 and 70.) They generally become *Indefinites*, when another Word comes before them in the Sentence, such as, *Scio*, *nescio*, *video*, *intelligo*, *dubito*, and the like; as, *Ubi* *frater tuus*? *Nescio* *abi* *fit*. *An* *venerans* *est*? *Dubito* *an* *venerans* *fit*.

NE the Adverb of Forbidding requires the *Imperative* or *Subjunctive*; as, *Ne time*, or *Ne timeas*. See Page 47.

*Dum*, *quam*, *quod*, *si*, *fin*, *ni*, *nisi*, *et si*, *etiam si*, *prinsquam*, *similas*, *si-  
quidem*, *quandoquidem*, &c. are joined sometimes with the *Indicative*, and  
sometimes with the *Subjunctive*.

# 100 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

## SYNTAXEOS *Synopsis,*

Sive

Genuina & maximè necessaria Constructionis Regulæ, ad quas cetera omnes reducuntur.

## AXIOMATA.

I. OMNIS Oratio constat ex Nominе & Verbo.

II. Omnis Nominativus habet suum Verbum expressum vel suppressum.

III. Omne Verbum finitum habet suum Nominativum expressum vel suppressum.

IV. Omne Adjectivum habet suum Substantivum expressum vel suppressum.

## Sex Casuum Constructio.

I. OMNE Verbum finitum expressum vel suppressum concordat cum Nominativo expresso vel suppresso in Numero & Persona; ut,

Puer legit.

Homines Ajunt.

Romanī [cooperant] festinare.

## A Summary of SYNTAX,

Or

The true and most necessary Rules of Construction, to which all the rest are reduced.

## First PRINCIPLES.

I. EVERT Speech [or Sentence] consists of a Noun and a Verb.

II. Every Nominative bath its own Verb express or understood.

III. Every Finite Verb bath its own Nominative express or understood.

IV. Every Adjective bath its own Substantive express or understood.

## The Construction of the Six Cases.

I. EVERT Verb of the Finite Mood express or understood agrees with its Nominative express or understood in Number and Person, as,

The Boy reads.

They say.

The Romans made haste.

II. Omnī

### Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 101

II. Omnis Genitivus regi-  
natur à Substantivo expresso  
et suppresso; ut,  
*Liber fratri.*

*Est [officium] patris.*

III. Dativus Acquisitionis,  
. e. cui aliquid acquiritur  
et adimitur] cuivis Nomini  
at Verbo expresso vel sup-  
presso jungitur; ut,  
*Dedi Petro.*

*Cui dedisti?*

[Dedi] *Petro.*

*Utilis bello.*

*Non est [aptus] solvendo,*

V. Omnis Accusativus re-  
gur à Verbo Activo vel  
Præpositione expressis vel  
under-  
pressis; ut,

*Amo Deum;*

*S [amo] parentes.*

*Ad patrem.*

*Abiit [ad] Londinum.*

Aut Infinitivo præponitur  
ve bath ressul vel suppressus; ut,  
cprest or *Dicit se scribere.*

*Iacet mibi [me] esse bonum.*

. Omnis Vocativus abso-  
ponitur, addita nonnun-  
m Interjectione O; ut,  
*Dave.*

*F the Fieus Syre.*

I. Omnis Ablativus regi-  
natur à + Præpositione expres-  
sionis vel suppressa; ut,  
*puero.*

*culsat [pro] gaudio.*

*haste.*

I. Omnis *Page 67, and Larger Syntax, Page 97 and 98.*

II. Every Genitive is go-  
verned by a Substantive ex-  
press or understood; as,

The Book of my Brother.

It is the Duty of a Father.

III. The Dative of Acquisi-  
tion [*i. e.* to which any thing  
is acquired, or from which it  
is taken] is joined to any Noun  
or Verb express or understood; as,

I gave it to Peter.

To whom did you give it?

To Peter.

Profitable for War.

He is not able to pay.

IV. Every Accusative is go-  
verned by an Active Verb, or a  
+ Preposition express or under-  
stood; as,

I love God;

and my Parents.

To the Father.

He hath gone to London.

¶ Or is put before the Infinitive  
express or understood; as,

He says that he is writing.

I may be good.

V. Every Vocative is placed  
absolutely, the Interjection O  
being sometimes added; as,

O Davis.

Come hither Cyrus.

VI. Every Ablative is go-  
verned by a + Preposition ex-  
press or understood; as,

From a Child.

He leaps for Joy.

### APPENDIX

## APPENDIX.

I. OMNE Adjectivum concordat cum Substantivo expresso vel suppresso, in Genere, Numero & Casu; ut,

*Bonus vir.*

*Triste [negotium.]*

II. Substantiva significantia eamdem rem convenienter in Casu; ut,

*Dominus Deus.*

III. Omnis Infinitivus regitur a Verbo vel Nominis expressis vel suppressis; ut,

*Cupio discere.*

*Dignus amari.*

*Populus [coepit] mirari.*

I. EVERY Adjective agrees with a Substantive express or understood, in Gender, Number and Case as,

A good Man.

A sad Thing.

II. Substantives signifying the same thing agree in Case as,

The Lord God.

III. Every Infinitive is governed by a Verb or Noun expressed or understood; as,

I desire to learn.

Worthy to be loved.

The People wondred.

## EXPLANATION.

ALL Construction is either TRUE or APPARENT, or (as Grammarians express it) JUST or FIGURATIVE. TRUE Construction is founded upon the essential Properties of Words, and is almost the same in all Languages. APPARENT Construction intirely depends upon Custom, whether for Elegance or Dispatch leaves out a great many Words otherwise necessary to make a Sentence perfectly full and Grammatical. The first is comprised in these few Fundamental Rules, and more fully branched out in Larger Syntax. The other is also interspersed through the Larger Syntax, but distinguished from that which is True by an Asterisk.

The Cases mentioned in the Rules of the Larger Syntax immediately cover the Rules of this Summary to which they respectively belong; those that are True without any Ellipsis; those that are Figurative by having an Ellipsis supplied as follows, as they are numbered in the Margin.

To RULE II. are reduced Numb. 13, supple *negotium*. Numb. 14, *de causa, gratia, or in re, negotio*. Numb. 15, sup. 4 *numero*. Numb. 21, sup. *de negotio*. Numb. 22 and 23, sup. *officium, negotium, &c.* Numb. 24, sup. 1. *Sat*, taken from the Verb. 2. *de causa, &c.* Numb. 29, *memoriam, notitiam, verba, &c.* Numb. 30, sup. *de crimine, pena*, Numb. 35. and 36, sup. *pro re, or pretio avis*. Numb. 40, sup. *inter nego* and *res* [serti] *sc ad negotia*. Numb. 41, sup. *res, negotium, &c.* Numb. 47, sup. *in urbe*. Numb. 60, *Domi*, sup. *in adibus*. Numb. 66. These Adjectives seem to be taken for Substantive Nouns.

To RULE III. is reduced Numb. 73, sup. *Malum est*; or these Intlections are used as Substantives.

### Part III. Chap. II. of Resolution. 103

To RULE IV. belong Numb. 18, 53, and 62, sup. ad. Numb. 33. sup. mod ad. Numb. 41, i. e. *Est inter mea negotia;* *Reserv* [or *res fert*] *se ad tua negotia,* &c. Numb. 58, sup. ad or in. Numb. 64. sup. per. Numb. 53, sup. *sentio, lugeo,* &c.

To RULE VI. belong Numb. 12. sup. e, ex, or cum. Numb. 19, sup. 20. Numb. 20, sup. de, e, ex, cum, &c. Numb. 21, sup. a, ab, &c.:

Numb. 34, sup. pro. Numb. 37, 38, sup. a, ab, de, e, ex. Numb. 51, and 55, sup. pra, cum, a, ab, e, ex, &c. Numb. 54, sup. in, or de. Numb. 57, sup. in. Numb. 59, sup. a, ab, e, ex. Numb. 62, sup. in. Numb. 64, sup. in, or pro. Numb. 65, sup. sub, cum, a, ab.

NOTE, 1. That under *Verbs* must also be comprehended *Participles, Gerunds and Supines*, because the general Signification of *Verbs* is included in them.

NOTE, 2. That as a Consequence of this, a learned Grammatician ingeniously supposes that the *Dative* and *Infinitive* are always governed by a *Verb*, and that when they seem to be governed by a *Noun*, the Participle *existens* is understood; as, *Utilis [existens] bello. Pollio prasidium [existens] reis. Di-*

*genus [existens] amari.*

NOTE, 3. That the *Vocative* is properly no part of a Sentence, but the case by which we excite one to hear or execute what we say. Therefore when the *Vocative* is put before the *Imperative*, as frequently happens, the *Nominative TU* or *VOS* is understood; and that even tho' these Words be already express in the *Vocative*; as, *Tu Jacobe lege, i. e. O tu Jacobe, tu lege.*

NOTE, 4. That the *Vocative* is sufficient to itself, and does not necessarily require the *Interjection O*. See *Vossius, Lib. VII. Cap. 69.* and *Santius, lib. IV. de Ellipsis Verb. Audio & Narro.*

## CHAP. II. Of Exposition or Resolution.

EXPOSITION or RESOLUTION is the Unfolding of a Sentence, and placing all the Parts of it, whether express or understood, in their proper Order, that the true Sense and Meaning of it may appear.

I A SENTENCE is either *Simple* or *Compound*.

1. A SIMPLE Sentence is that which hath one Finite Verb in it.
2. A COMPOUND Sentence is that which hath two or more such Verbs in it, joined together by some Couples.

These COUPLES are of four Sorts, 1. The Relative QUI. 2. Some Comparative Words, such as *Tantus, quantus; Talis, qualis; Tam, quam,* &c. 3. Indefinite Words [See Page 70 and 99.] 4. Conjunctions.

In a Simple Sentence there are two things to be considered, 1. Its *Essential*, 2. Its *Accidental* Parts.

1. The Essential Parts of a Sentence are a *Nominative* and a *Verb*.
2. The Accidental Parts are of four Kinds, 1. Such as excite Attention, as the *Vocative* and exciting Particles; as, *O, eu, ecce, heus, &c.* 2. Such as serve to introduce a Sentence, or to shew its Dependence upon what was said before; as, *Jam, hancen, quandoquidem, cum, dum, interest, &c.* 3. Such as limit the general and indefinite Signification either of the *Nominative* or *Verb*, and these are *Substantive Nouns*. 4. Such as qualify and explain them, viz. Adje-

## 104 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

*Adjectives, Adverbs and Prepositions, with their Cases.* Sometimes a Part of a Compound Sentence supplies the Place of these two last kinds of Words.

II. The ORDER of Words in a Sentence is either *Natural* or *Artificial*.  
1. NATURAL Order is when the Words of a Sentence naturally follow one after another in the same Order with the Conceptions of our Minds.

ARTIFICIAL Order is when Words are so ranged as to render them more agreeable to the Ear; but so as the Sense be not thereby obscured.

III. A Sentence may be resolved from the Artificial into the Natural Order by the following Rules.

1. Take the *Vocative, Exciting and Introductory* Words, where they are found.

2. The **NOMINATIVE**.

3. Words *limiting or explaining it*, i. e; Words agreeing with or governed by it, or by another successively (till you come to the *Verb*,) where they are found.

4. The **VERB**.

5. Words *limiting or explaining it*, &c. where they are found, to the End of the Sentence.

6. Supply every where the Words that are understood.

7. If the Sentence is compound, take the Parts of it severally, as they depend upon one another, proceeding with each of them as before.

### E X A M P L E.

*Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibi persuade esse te quidem mibi carissimum; si multo fore cariorem, si talibus monumentis praeceptisque letabere. Cic. Olib. 3.*

Farewell then my [Son] Cicero, and assure your self that you are indeed very dear unto me; but shall be much dearer, if you shall take Delight in such Writings and Instructions.

This Compound Sentence is resolved into these five Simple Sentences.

1. *Igitur mi [fili] Cicero, [tu] vale, 2. & [tu] persuade tibi te quidem carissimum [filium] mibi; 3. sed [tu persuade tibi te] fore cariorem [filio mibi in] multo [negotio] 4. si [tu] letabere talibus monumentis, g. & tu letabere talibus] praeceps.*

NOTE, 1. That *Interrogative* Words stand always first in a Sentence, unless a *Preposition* comes before them.

NOTE, 2. That *Negative* Words stand immediately before the *Verb*.

NOTE, 3. That *Relatives* are placed before the Word by which they are governed, unless it is a *Preposition*.

NOTE, 4. That the *Subjunctive Mood* is used in Compound Sentences.

NOTE, 5. That the Parts of a Compound Sentence are separated from one another by these Marks called **INTERPUNCTIONS**. 1. These that are smaller, named *Clauses*, by this Mark (,) called a *Comma*. 2. These that are greater, named *Members*, by this Mark (:), called a *Colon*, or this (;) called a *Semicolon*. 3. When a Sentence is thrown in that hath little or no Connection with the rest, it is enclosed within what we call a *Parenthesis*, marked thus, ( ).

But when the Sentence, whether *Simple* or *Compound*, is fully ended, if it is a plain *Affirmation* or *Negation*, it is closed with this Mark (.) called a *Point*. If a *Question* is asked, with this Mark (?) called a *Point of Interrogation*. *Wonder* or some other sudden *Passion* is signified, with this Mark (!) called a *Point of Admiration*.

**F I N I S.**

P R I M A

Morum & Pietatis  
PRÆCEPTA,

V I Z.

- Diota septem Sapientum è Græcis.*  
I. *Gulielmi Lili Monita Pædagogica.*  
II. *Dion. Catonis Disticha Moralia.*  
V. *Joan. Sulpitii Verulani de Moribus & Civilitate Puerorum Carmen.*  
V. *Rudimenta Pietatis, sive, Oratio Dominica, Symbolum Apostolicum & Decalogus; item duorum Sacramentorum, Baptismi & sacræ Cœnæ Domini, Institutiones.*

Quibus accessit

summula CATECHISMI, ad piam Juniorum Educationem apprime utilis;

I T E M

ræcipua Capita Christianæ religionis, dësumpta è sacra Scriptura Veteris ac Novi Testamenti.

---

Domini initium Sapientia est. Prov. i. 7.  
ieras ad omnia utilis est, promissiones habens & præsentis & futuræ vita. 1 Tim. iv. 8.

---

B D I N B U R G I,

in Ædibus THO. RUDDIMANNI, Anno Dom. 1739.

**Dicita SAPIENTUM è Græcis, DErrasmo Roterod. Interpret.**

*Aurea dicita, puer, qua sunt hic, mente recondez  
Hinc poteris magna commoditate frui.*

**Dicita PERIANDRI CORINTHII.**

**O**MNIBUS placeto.  
Bona res quies.  
Periculosa temeritas. [tales;  
Semper voluptates sunt mor-  
Honores autem immortales.  
Amicis adversa fortunâ uten-  
tibus idem esto.  
Lucrum turpe, res pessima.  
Quicquid promiseris, facito.  
Infortunium tuum celato, ne  
voluptate afficias inimicos.  
Veritati adhæreto.  
Age quae justa sunt.  
Violentiam oderis.  
Principibus cede.  
Voluptati tempera.  
A jurejurando abstine.  
Pietatem seftare.  
Laudato honesta.  
A vitiis abstine.  
Beneficium repende.  
Supplicibus misericors esto.  
Liberos instrue.  
Sapientum utere consuetudi-  
Liter: oderis. [ne.  
Bonos in pretio habeto.  
Arcanum cela.  
Cede magnis.  
Opportunitatem expectato.

Mortalia cogita.  
Ne prior injuriam facias,  
Audi quæ ad te pertinent.  
Probrum fugito.  
Résponde in tempore.  
Ea facito quorum te non posse posse  
Ne cui invideas. [ponenter sedi  
Oculis moderare.  
Quod justum est imitare.  
Bene meritos honora.  
Spem fove.  
Calumniam oderis.  
Affabilis esto.  
Cum erraris, muta consilium  
Concordiam seftare.  
Diuturnam amicitiam custodi  
Magistratus metue. [etiam  
Omnibus te ipsum præbe.  
Ne loquaris ad gratiam.  
Ne tempori credideris.  
Te ipsum ne negligas.  
Seniorem reverere.  
Mortem oppete pro patria  
Ne quavis de re doleas.  
Ex ingenuis liberos crea.  
Sperato tanquam mortalis.  
Parcito tanquam immortalis.  
Ne efferaris gloria.  
Largire cum utilitate. Amic

micias utere.  
mortuum ne irridete.

Diligē amicos.  
Consule inculpatē.

### *Dīcta BIANTIS PRIENENSIS.*

N speculo te ipsum contem-  
plare, & si formosus ap-  
parebis, age quæ deceant  
formam : fin deformis,  
quod in facie minus est,  
vel deest, id morum pen-  
satio pulchritudine.  
uditio multa :  
quere paucā.  
e numine ne male loquaris :

Quid sit autem auscultā:  
Prius autem intellige ; & de:  
inde ad opus accede.  
Ne ob divitias laudāris vi:  
rum indignum.  
Persuasione cape, non vi.  
Compara in adolescentia qui:  
dem modestiam, in senectu:  
te verò prudentiam.

### *Dīcta PITTA CI MITYLENÆI.*

Q uæ facturus es, ea ne  
dixeris; frustratus e:  
nim rideberis.  
non posse depositum redde.  
ceniter fidiosus ne esto.  
familiaribus in minutis re:  
bus lœsus, seras.  
mico ne maledixeris.  
imicum ne putas a micum.  
xori dominare [Christianæ.]  
uæ feceris parentibus, ea:  
dem à liberis expecta.  
ter amicos ne fueris judex.  
e contendere cum parentibus,  
[etiam si] justa dixeris.  
e geras imperium, priu:  
quam parere didiceris.

Infortunatum ne irriseris.  
Auditio libenter.  
Ne lingua præcurrat mentem.  
Ne festines loqui.  
Nosce te ipsum.  
Legibus pare.  
Voluptatem coercere.  
Ne quid nimis.  
Inimicitiam solve.  
Ante omnia venerare Numen.  
Parentes reverere.  
Quæ fieri non possunt, cāvē  
concupisca.  
Uxorem ducit ex æqualib⁹;  
ne, si ex ditionibus dux:  
ris, dominos tibi pares, non  
affines.

### *Dīcta CLEOBULI LINDII.*

T E sis unquam elatus.  
Domus curam age.  
bros evolve.  
crea. stè judicato.  
ortalis. onis benefacito.  
mortal. berostibi charissimos erudi.  
ite. maledicentia temperato.

Suspicionem abjicito.  
Parentes patientiā vince.  
Beneficii accepti memento.  
Inferiorem ne rejicias.  
Aliena ne concupisca.  
Ne te ipsum præcipites in  
discrimen.

Res amici diligas, ac perinde serves ut tuas. [minum.  
Lapis auri index, aurum ho-  
Quod oderis, alteri ne feceris.  
Voto nil pretiosius.  
Ne cui ministeris; est enim muliebre.

Citius ad infortunatos amicos, quam ad fortunatos proficisci.

Mendax calumniā vitam corripit.  
Mendaces odit quisque prudens & sapiens.

## Ditta CHILONIS LACEDÆMONII.

**N**Osc te ipsum. Italia. Sapientiā utere.  
Ne cui invideas mortem.  
Temperantiam exerce.  
Turpia fuge.  
Tempori parce.  
Juste rem para.

Multitudini place.  
Oderis calumnias.  
Ne quid suspiceris.  
Moribus probatis esto.  
Ne fueris onerosus.

## Ditta SOLONIS ATHENIENSIS.

**D**Eum cole.  
Parentes reverere.  
Amicis succurre.  
Veritatem sustineto.  
Ne jurato.

Legibus pareto.  
Cogita quod justum est.  
Iracundiaz moderare.  
Virtutem laudato.  
Malos odio prosequitor.

## Ditta THALETIS MILESII.

**P**Rincipem honora.  
Amicos probato.  
Similis tui sis.  
Nemini promittito.  
Quod adest boni consulite.  
A vitiis abstinento.

Gloriam sedare.  
Vitæ curam age.  
Pacem dilige.  
Laudatus esto apud omnes.  
Susurronem ex ædibus ejus.

GULIELMI LILII Monita Pædagogica  
Sive Carmen de Moribus ad suos Discipulos.

**Q**Ui mihi discipulus, Puer, es, cupis atque doceri,  
Huc ades, hæc animo concipe dicta tuo.  
Mane citus lectum fuge, mollem discute somnum:  
Templa petas supplex, & venerare Deum.  
Attamen in primis facies sit lota manusque;  
Sint nitidæ vestes, comptaque cæsaries.  
Desidiam fugiens, cum te schola nostra vocârit,  
Adsis; nulla pigræ sit tibi causa moræ.

## De Moribus.

5

de Præceptorem cum videris, ore saluta,  
Et condiscipulos ordine quoque tuos.  
u quoque fac sedeas, ubi te sedisse jubemus;  
Inque loco, nisi sis jussus abire, mane.  
c magis ut quisque est doctrinæ munere clarus,  
Hoc magis is clarâ sede locandus erit.  
alpellum, calami, atramentum, charta, libelli,  
Sint semper studiis arma parata tuis.  
quid dictabo, scribes; at singula recte:  
Nec macula, aut scriptis menda sit ulla tuis.  
d tua nec laceris dictata aut carmina chartis  
Mandes, quæ libris inseruisse decet.  
epe recognoscas tibi lecta, animoque revolvas:  
Si dubites, nunc hos consule, nunc alios.  
ui dubitat, qui sœpe rogat, mea dicta tenebit;  
ls qui nil dubitat, nil capit inde boni.  
isce, puer, quæso; noli dediscere quicquam:  
Ne mens te insimulet conscientia desidiae.  
que animo attentus: quid enim docuisse juvabit,  
Si mea non firmo pectori verba premas?  
Il tam difficile est, quod non solertia vincat:  
Invigila, & parta est gloria militiæ.  
am veluti flores tellus, nec semina profert,  
Ni sit continuo vista labore manus:  
puer, ingenium si non exercitet, ipsum  
Tempus & amittit, spem simul ingenii.  
us ejus etiam semper lex in sermone tenenda,  
Ne nos offendat improba garrulitas.  
cumbens studio, submissâ voce loqueris;  
Nobis dum reddit, voce canorus eris.  
quæcunque mihi reddes, discantur ad unguem;  
singula & abjecto verbula redde libro.  
c verbum quisquam dicturo suggerat ullum;  
Quod puer exitium non mediocre parit.  
quicquam rogito, sic respondere studebis;  
It laudem dictis & mereare decus.  
a lingua celeri nimis, aut laudabere tarda;  
Est virtus medium, quod tenuisse juvat.  
quoties loqueris, memor esto loquare Latinè;  
Et veluti scopulos barbara verba fuge.  
eterea socios, quoties te cunque rogabunt,  
Infrue; & ignoros ad mea vota trahe.

A 3

Qui

## GVL. LILII Carmen, &c.

Qui docet indoctos, licet indoctissimus esset,  
Ipse brevi reliquis doctior esse queat.  
Sed tu nec stolidos imitabere Grammaticastros,  
Ingens Romani dedecus eloquii:  
Quorum tam fatuus nemo, aut tam barbarus ore est,  
Quem non auctorem barbarā turba probet,  
Grammaticas recte si vis cognoscere leges,  
Discere si cupias cultius ore loqui;  
Addiscas veterum clarissima scripta virorum,  
Et quos auctores turba Latina docet.  
Nunc te Virgilius, nunc ipse Terentius optat,  
Nunc simul amplecti te Ciceronis opus:  
Quos qui non didicit, nil præter somnia vidi,  
Certat & in tenebris vivere Cimmeriis.  
Sunt quos delectat (studio virtutis honesta  
Posthabito) nugis tempora conterere:  
Sunt quibus est cordi, manibus pedibusve sodales,  
Aut alio quovis sollicitare modo:  
Est aliis, qui se dum claram sanguine jastat,  
Insulso reliquis improbat ore genus,  
Te tam prava sequi nolim vestigia morum:  
Ne tandem factis præmia digna feras.  
Nil dabis aut vendes, nil permutabis emesve,  
Ex damno alterius commoda nulla feres.  
Insuper & nummos, irritamenta malorum,  
Mitte aliis: Puerum nil nisi pura decent.  
Clamor, rixa, joci, mendacia, furta, cachinni,  
Sint procul a vobis; Martis & arma procul.  
Nil penitus dices, quod turpe, aut non sit honestum:  
Est vita ac pariter janua lingua necis.  
Ingens crede nefas cuiquam maledicta referre,  
Jurare aut magni nomina sacra Dei.  
Denique servabis res omnes, atque libellos,  
Et tecum, quoties isque redisque, feres.  
Effuge vel causas faciunt quæcunque nocentem,  
In quibus & nobis displicuisse potes.

# DIONYSII CATONIS Disticha de Moribus, ad filium:

*Recognita de novo ad Metaphrasin Jos. Scaligeri, ejusdemque  
D. Erasmi, P. Scriverrii & M. Zuer. Boxhornii Notas &  
Castigationes, à T. R.*

In usum Scholarum.

*Illis qua cecinit Themis aut Thymbraens Apollo,  
Non canit biceps catus deteriora Cato.*

*Præfatio cum brevissimis Præceptis.*

**Q**UUM animadverterem quā plurimos homines graviter errare in via morum, succurrendum & consulendum eorum opinioni existimavi, maximè ut gloriose vivent, & honorem contingerent. Nunc te (fili charissime) docebo, quo pacto mores animi tui componas. Igitur Præcepta mea ita legito, ut intelligas: Legere enim, & non intelligere, negligere est.

Taque Deo supplica.

Parentes ama.

Cognatos cole.

Magistrum metue.

Datum serva.

Foro te para.

Cum bonis ambula.

Ad consilium ne acceperis,  
antequam voceris.

Mundus esto.

Saluta libenter.

Majori cede.

Minori parce.

Rem tuam custodi.

Verecundiam serva.

Diligentiam adhibe.

Libros lege.

Quæ legeris memento.

Familiam cura.

Blandus esto.

Irasci ab re noli.

Neminem irriseris.

Miserum ne irriseris.

Mutuum dato.

Cui des videto.

In judicium adesto.

Conjugem ama.

Liberos erudi.

Patere legem quam ipse tuliris.

Pauca in convivio loquere.

Convivare raro.

Quod satis est dormi.

Jusjurandum serva.

Vino te tempera.

Pugna pro patria.

Nil temere credideris.

Tu te consule.

Meretricem fuge.

Literas disce.

Nihil mentiri debes.

Bonis benefacito.

Maledicus ne esto.

Existimationem retine.

Æquum judica.

Parentes patientia vince.

*Distichorum CATONIS,*

Beneficii accepti memor esto.	Aleas fuge.
Ad prætorium statu.	Nihil ex arbitrio virium feci.
Consultus esto.	Minoremte ne contempseris.
Utere virtute.	Aliena concupiscere noli.
Iracundiam tempera.	Illud stude quod justum est.
Trocho lude.	Amorem libenter fert.

*DISTICORVM de Moribus,*

## LIBER I.

*Dei cultus præcipius.*

**S**i Deus est animus, nobis ut carmina dicunt,  
Hic tibi præcipue sit pura mente colendus.  
*Somnolentia vitanda.*

Plus vigila semper, nec somno deditus esto:  
Nam diurna quies vitiis alimenta ministrat.  
*Cobibenda lingua.*

Virtutem primam esse puta compescere linguam:  
Proximus ille Deo, qui scit ratione tacere.  
*Sibi ipsi convenientium.*

Sperne repugnando tibi tu contrarius esse:  
Conveniet nulli qui secum dissidet ipse.  
*Nemo temere culpandus.*

Si vitam inspicias hominum, si denique mores,  
Cum culpas alios, nemo sine crimine vivit.  
*Utilitas divitiae anteponenda.*

Quæ nocitura tenes, quamvis sint chara, relinque:  
Utilitas opibus præponi tempore debet.  
*Mores pro tempore mutandi.*

Et + levis & constans, ut res expostulat, esto: <sup>+ al. Consta-</sup> Ne  
Temporibus mores sapiens sine crimine mutat: <sup>aut levis re-</sup> Qui  
*Uzori non semper assentendum.* <sup>gnante me</sup>

Nil temerè uxori de servis crede querenti:  
Sæpe etenim mulier, quem conjunx diligit, odit.  
*Instandum correctioni amici.*

Cumque mones aliquém, nec se velit ipse moneri,  
Si tibi sit charus, noli desistere cœptis.  
*Stulti verbis non vincuntur.*

Contra verbosos noli contendere verbis:  
Sermo datur cunctis. animi sapientia paucis.  
*Amicus sibi quisque primus.*

Dilige sic alios, ut sis tibi charus amicus,  
Sic bonus esto bonis, ne te mala damna sequantur,

# LIBER I.

9

*Rumores spargere vetitum.*

Rumores fuge, ne incipias novus auctor haberi:  
Nam nulli tacuisse nocet, nocet esse locutum.

*Fides aliena non promittenda.*

Rem tibi promissam certò promittere noli:  
Rara fides ideo est, quia multi multa loquuntur.

*Judex quisque sit fax.*

Cum te aliquis laudat, judex tuus esse memento:  
Plus aliis de te, quam tu tibi credere noli.

*Beneficiorum ratio.*

Officium alterius multis narrare memento:  
Atque aliis cum tu benefeceris, ipse fileto.

*Senio bene gesta referenda.*

Multorum cum facta senex & dicta recenses,  
Fac tibi succurrant, juvenis quæ feceris ipse.

*Suspicionis labes.*

Ne cures si quis tacito sermone loquatur:  
Conscius ipse sibi de se putat omnia dici.

*In prosperis de adversis cogitandum.*

Cum fueris felix, quæ sunt adversa caveto:  
Non eodem cursu respondent ultima primis.

*Mors alterius non speranda.*

Cum dubia & fragilis sit nobis vita tributa,  
In morte alterius spem tu tibi ponete noli.

*Animus in dono estimandus.*

Exiguum munus cum dat tibi pauper amicus,  
Accipito placide, plenè & laudare memento.

*Paupertas toleranda.*

Infantem nudum cum te natura creabit,  
Paupertatis onus patienter ferre memento.

*Mors non formidanda.*

Ne timeas illam, quæ vita est ultima finis:  
Qui mortem metuit, quod vivit perdit id ipsum.

*Amicorum ingratitudo fugienda.*

Si tibi pro meritis nemo responderet amicus,  
Incusare Deum noli, sed te ipse coerce.

*Frugalitas.*

Ne tibi quid desit, quæsitus utere parcè:  
Utque quod est serves, semper tibi deesse putato.

*Promissio iterata molesta.*

Quod præstare potes, ne bis promiseris ulli:  
Ne sis ventosus, dum vis bonus ipse videri.

*Ars oris deludenda.*

Qui simulat verbis, nec corde est fidus amicus:  
Tu quoque fac simile; sic ars deluditur arte.

*Blas-*

*Distichorum CATONIS,**Blandiloquentia suspecta.*

Noli homines blando nimium sermone probare:  
Fistula dulce canit, volucrem dum decipit auceps.

*Liberi artibus instruendi.*

Cum tibi sint nati, nec opes; tunc artibus illos  
Instrue, quò possint inopem defendere vitam.

*Res quomodo affimanda.*

Quod vile est, carum; quod carum est, vile putato:  
Sic tibi nec cupidus, nec avarus habebaris ulli.

*Culpata non facienda.*

Quæ culpare soles, ea tu ne feceris ipse:  
Turpe est doctori, cum culpa redarguit ipsum.

*Concedenda petenda.*

Quod justum est petito, vel quod videatur honestum:  
Nam stultum est petere id, quod possit jure negari.

*Nota ignotis non commutanda.*

Ignotum tibi tu noli præponere notis:  
Cognita judicio constant, incognita casu.

*Dies quisque supremus putandus.*

Cum dubia incertis verisetur vita periclis,  
Pro lucro tibi pone diem quicunque laboras.

*Obsecundandum amicis.*

Vincere cum possis, interdum cede sodali:  
Obsequio quoniam dulces retinentur amici.

*Amicitia mutua officia.*

Ne dubites, cum magna petes, impendere parva:  
His etenim rebus conjungit Gratia charos.

*Amicitia rixas odit.*

Litem inferre cave cum quo tibi gratia juncta est:  
Ira odium generat, concordia nutrit amorem.

*Castigatio sine ira.*

Servorum ob culpam cum te dolor urget in iram,  
Ipse tibi moderare, tuis ut parcere possis.

*Patientia vincendum.*

Quem superare potes, interdum vince ferendo:  
Maxima enim morum semper patientia virtus.

*Quæsita sunt servanda.*

Conserua potius, quæ sunt jam parta labore:  
Cum labor in damno est, crescit mortalis egestas.

*Consulendum sibi in primis.*

Dapsilis interdum notis, & charus amicis,  
Cum fueris felix, semper tibi proximus es.

## LIBER II.

ii

### L I B . II . P R A E F A T I O .

**T**Elluris si forte velis cognoscere cultus,  
Virgilium legito. Quod si magè nōesse laboras  
Herbarum vires, Macer has tibi carmine dicet,  
Corporis ut cunctos possis depellere morbos.  
Si Romana cupis & civica noscere bella,  
Lucanum quæras, qui Martis prælia dixit.  
Si quis amare velis, vel discere amare legendo,  
Nasonem petito. Sin autem cura tibi hæc est,  
Ut sapiens vivas, audi quæ discere possis,  
Per quæ semotum vitiis traducitur ævum.  
Ergo ades, & quæ sit sapientia, disce legendo.

*De omnibus bens merendum.*

**S**i potes, ignotis etiam prodeste memento:  
Utilius regno est meritis acquirere amicos.  
*Arcana Dei non scrutanda.*

Mitte arcana Dei, cœlumque inquirere quid sit;  
Cum sis mortalis, quæ sunt mortalia cura.

*Mortis timor gaudia vita pollit.*

Linque metum lethi, nam stultum est tempore in omni,  
Dum mortem metuis, amittere gaudia vita.

*Iracundia cavenda.*

Iratus de re incerta contendere noli:  
Impedit ira animum, ne possit certnere verum.

*Expendendum ubi opus est.*

Fac sumptum propere, cum res desiderat ipsa:  
Dandum etenim est aliquid, cum tempus postulat aut res.

*Fortuna modico tutior.*

Quod nimium est fugito, parvo gaudere memento:  
Tuta magè est puppis modico quæ flumine fertur.

*Occulta vita reticenda.*

Quod pudeat, socios prudens celare memento:  
Ne plures culpent id, quod tibi displicet uni.

*Occulta tandem revelantur.*

Nolo putas pravos homines peccata lucrari:

Temporibus peccata latent, sed tempore + parent. t. i. e. ap-  
parent, val-  
go parent  
contra me-  
tri legem.

*Imbecillitas virtute compensatur.*

Corporis exigui vires contemnere noli:

Confilio pollet, cui vim natura negavit.

*Cedendum posiori ad tempus.*

Cui sciēris non esse parem te, tempore cede:

Victorem à victo superari sape videmus.

Rixan.

*Distichorum CATONIS,*

*Rixandum cum familiaribus non esse.*

Adversus notum noli contendere verbis:

Lis minimis verbis interdum maxima crescit.

*Fortuna non quarenda sorte.*

Quid Deus intendat, noli perquirere sorte:

Quid statuat de te, sine te deliberat ipse.

*Luxus odium generat.*

Invidiam nimio cultu vitare memento:

Quæ si non lædit, tamen hanc sufferre molestum est.

*Animus non deponendus ob iniquum iudicium.*

Esto animo fortis, cum sis damnatus inique:

Nemo diu gaudet, qui judge vincit iniquo.

*Reconciliatis lis non refricanda.*

Litis præterita noli maledicta referre:

Post inimicitias iram meminisse, malorum est.

*Tensum neque lauda, neque culpa.*

Nec te collaudes, nec te culpaveris ipse:

Hoc faciunt fructi, quos gloria vexat inanis.

*Parsumponia.*

Utere quæsitis parcè, cum sumptus abundat:

Labitur exiguus, quod partum est tempore longo.

*Supercilium nonnunquam deponendum.*

Insipiens esto, cum tempus postulat, aut res:

Stultitiam simulare loco, prudentia summa est.

*Neque prodigus, neque avarus.*

Luxuriam fugito; simul & vitare memento

Crimen avaritiae: nam sunt contraria famæ.

*Loquaci parum credendum.*

Noli tu quædam referenti credere semper:

Exigua iis tribuenda fides qui multa loquuntur.

*Ebrini vinum non accuset.*

Quæ potu peccas, ignoscere tu tibi noli;

Nam nullum crimen vini est, sed culpa bibentis.

*Amicis consilia credenda.*

Consilium arcana tacito committe sodali:

Corporis auxilium medico committe fideli.

*Successus malorum ne te offendat.*

Indignos noli successus ferre molestè:

Indulget fortuna malis ut lædere possit.

*Futuros casus pravidendos.*

Prospice, qui veniunt, hos casus esse ferendos:

Nam lævius lædit, quicquid prævidimus ante.

*Animus in adversis spe fovendus.*

Rebus in adversis animum submittere noli:

Spem retine: spes una hominem nec morte relinquit:

*Oppar.*

# LIBER III.

13

*Opportunitas cum contingit tenenda.*

Rem, tibi quam noscis aptam, dimittere noli:  
Fronte capillata, post est occasio calva.

*Futura ex prateritis colligenda.*

Quod sequitur, specta; quodque imminet ante, videto:  
Illum imitare Deum, qui partem spectat utramque.

*Vita ratio babenda.*

Fortius ut valeas, interdum parcior esto:  
Pauca voluptati debentur, plura saluti.

*Multitudini cedendum.*

Judicium populi nunquam contempseris unus:  
Ne nulli placeas, dum vis contemnere multos.

*Valentudo curanda.*

Sit tibi præcipue, quod primum est, cura salutis;  
Tempora ne culpes, cum sis tibi causa doloris.

*Somnia non observanda.*

Somnia ne cures: nam mens humana quod optat,  
Dum vigilans sperat, per somnum cernit id ipsum.

## L I B . III . P R Æ F A T I O .

**H**oc quicunque voles carmen cognoscere, Lector,  
Quum præcepta ferat quæ sunt gratissima vita,  
Commoda multæ seres. Sin autem spreveris illud,  
Non me scriptorem, sed te neglexeris ipse.

*Dandam esse operam literis:*

**I**ntrue præceptis animum, nec discere cesses:  
Nam sine doctrina vita est quasi mortis imago.

*Moribus captanda fama.*

Fortunæ donis semper parere memento:  
Non opibus bona fama datur, sed moribus ipsis.

*Rète agendo aliorum linguam ne times.*

Cum rectè vivas, ne cures verba malorum:  
Arbitrii nostri non est quod quisque loquatur.

*Amici crimen celandum.*

Productus testis, salvo tamen ante pudore,  
Quantumcumque potes, celato crimen amici.

*Blandiloquentia suspecta.*

Ermones blandos blasphemique cavere memento:  
Implicitas veri + sana est, fraus ficta loquendi.

*Ignava vita fugienda.*

*† Scal. fama,*

*i. e. indicium,*

*al. norma.*

Egnitiem fugito, quæ vitæ ignavia fertur:

Jam cum animus languet, consumit inertia corpus.

*Animus fessus relaxandus.*

Interpone tuis interdum gaudia curis:

Et possis animo quemvis sufferre laborem.

*Malo*

*Oppos.*

*Malo animo neminem reprobendas.*

**Alterius dictum, aut factum, ne carperis unquam:**  
**Exemplo simili ne te derideat alter.**

*Hæreditas augenda.*

**Quod tibi fors dederit tabulis suprema notato,**  
**Augendo serva, ne sis quem fama loquatur.**

*Senatus sit munifica.*

**Cum tibi divitiae superant in fine senectæ;**  
**Munificus facito vivas, non parcus amicis.**

*Verba attendenda, non os logentis.*

**Utile consilium dominus ne despice servi,**  
**Nullius sensum, si prodest, tempseris unquam.**

*Præsenti utendum fortuna.*

**Rebus & in censu si non est quod fuit ante,**  
**Fac vivas contentus eo quod tempora præbent.**

*Uxor spe dotis non querenda.*

**Uxorem fuge ne ducas sub nomine dotis:**  
**Nec retinere velis, si cœperit esse molesta.**

*Alieno sapere exemplo.*

**Multorum disce exemplo quæ facta sequaris,**  
**Quæ fugias: Vita est nobis aliena magistræ.**

*Nihil ultra vires.*

**Quod potes, id tentes; operis ne pondere pressus**  
**Succumbat labor, & frustra tentata relinquas.**

*Consentire videtur qui tacet.*

**Quod nōsti haud rectè factum, nolito silere:**  
**Ne videare malos imitari velle tacendo.**

*Rigor favora temperandus.*

**Judicis auxilium sub iniqua lege rogato:**  
**Ipse etiam leges cupiunt ut jure regantur.**

*Feras qua tua culpa pateris.*

**Quod meritò patetis, patienter ferre memento:**  
**Cumque reus tibi sis, ipsum te judice damna.**

*Multa legenda, sed cum judicio.*

**Multa legas facio: perlectis + perlege multa:** *1 al. neglig*  
**Nam miranda canunt, sed non credenda, poetæ.**

*Modestus in convivio loquendum.*

**Inter convivas fac sis sermone modestus:**  
**Ne dicare loquax, dum vis urbanus haberi.**

*Iracundia uxoris non formidanda.*

**Conjugis iratae nolito verba timere:**  
**Nam lachrymis struit insidias, dum foemina plorat.**

*Quafitis utendum, non abutendum.*

**Utere quæsitis, sed ne videarais abuti:**  
**Qui sua consumunt, cum deceat, aliena sequuntur.**

*Mulge*

# L I B E R C V.

*Mors non formidanda.*

Fac tibi proponas mortem non esse timendam:  
Quæ bona si non est, finis tamen illa malorum est:

*Uxor proba, si loquax, serenda.*

Uxoris linguam, si fruge est, ferre memento:  
Namque malum est te nolle pati, hanc non posse tacero.

*Pietas erga parentes.*

Equà diligito charos pietate parentes:  
Nec matrem offendas, dum vis bonus esse parenti.

## L I B . IV . P R Æ F A T I O .

**S**Ecum quicunque cùpis traducere vitam,  
Nec vitiis hærente animum, quæ moribus obsunt;  
Hæc præcepta tibi semper relegenda memento:      † al. quo  
vite utare.  
al. tu te u-  
tare.

nvenies aliquid quo † te nitare magistro.

*Divitiarum contemptus.*

**D**Espice divitias, si vis animo esse beatus;  
Quas qui suspiciunt, medicant semper, avari.

*Vivere secundum naturam optimum.*

Commoda naturæ nullo tibi tempore deērunt,  
i contentus eo fueris quod postulat usus.

*Res ratione regenda.*

Cum sis incautus, nec rem ratione gubernes,  
Soli fortunam, quæ † nulla est, dicere cæcam.      † al. non est.

*Amor pecunia ad usum.*

Ilige \* denarium, sed parce dilge formam,      \* al. denarii.  
Quam nemo sanctus nec honestus captat † habere.      † al. ab ure.

*In valetudine se opibus parcas.*

Uum fueris locuples, corpus curare memento:  
Iger dives habet nummos, \* sed non habet ipsum.      \* al. fe-

*Caſigatio paterna ferenda.*

Terbera cum tuleris discens aliquando magisteri,  
Et patris imperium, cum verbis exit in iram.

*Certa & utilia agenda.*

Spes age quæ prosunt: rursus vitare memento  
Quibus error ineſt, nec spes est certa laboris.

*Libenter donandum.*

Nod donare potes gratis, † concede roganti:      † al. ne vende-  
Am reſē ſecifſe bonis in parte \* lucroſum eſt.      \* al. lucrorum.

*Suspicio ſlatim expendens.*

Nod tibi ſuſpectum eſt, confeſtim diſcute quid ſit:  
Imque ſolent, primò quæ ſunt neglecta, nocere.

*Venus abſumentia cohibenda.*

Nm te detineat Veneris damnoſa voluptas,  
Mulgere guia noli, quæ ventris amica eſt.

*Homo*

# *Distichorum CATONIS,*

*Homo malus, sara pessima.*

**Cum tibi proponas animalia cuncta timere,  
Unum hominem tibi præcipio plus esse timendum.**

*Sapientia fortitudini preferenda.*

**Cum tibi prævalidæ fuerint in corpore vires,  
Fac sapias; sic tu poteris vir fortis haberi.**

*Amicus cordis medicus.*

**Auxilium à notis petito, si forte laboras,  
Nec quisquam melior medicus, quām fidus amicus.**

*Sacrificium spiritus dejectus.*

**Cum sis ipse nocens, moritur cur viætima pro te?  
Stultitia est morte alterius sperare salutem.**

*Amicus ex moribus deligendus.*

**Cum tibi vel socium, vel fidum queris amicum,  
Non tibi fortuna est hominis, sed vita petenda.**

*Avaritia vitanda.*

**Utere quæsitis opibus; fuge nomen avari:**

**Quid tibi divitiæ prosunt, si pauper abundas?**

*Voluptas inimica famæ.*

**Si famam se dare cupis, dum vivis, honestam;  
Fac fugias a me, quæ sunt mala gaudia vitæ.**

*Senem etiam delirum ne irriteris.*

**Cum sapias animo, noli irridere senectam:  
Nam quicunque senet, sensus puerilis in illo est.**

*Opes fluxa, ars perpetua.*

**Disce aliquid: nam cum subito fortuna recessit,  
Ars remanet, vitamque hominis non deserit unquam.**

*Mores ex verbis cogniti.*

**Perspicito tecum tacitus, quid quisque loquatur;  
Sermo etenim mores & celat & indicat idem.**

*Ars usu juvanda.*

**Exerce studium, quamvis perceperis artem:  
Ut cura ingenium, sic & manus adjuvat usum.**

*Vita contemptus.*

**Multum ne cures venturi tempora fati:**

**Non metuit mortem qui scit contemnere vitam.**

*Discendum & docendum.*

**Disce, sed à doctis: indoctos ipse doceto:**

**Propaganda etenim rerum doctrina bonarum est.**

*Bibendi ratio.*

**Hoc bibe quod possis, si tu vis vivere sanus :**

**Morbi causa mali nimia est + quandoque voluptas.**

*No damnes quod probaveris.*

**Laudaris quodcunque palam, quodcunque probaris,  
Hoc vide ne rursus levitatis criminè damnes.**

*Circumspectus utrāque fortunā esto.*

tranquillis rebus quæ suat adversa + timeto: † al. canticos  
ursus in adversis melius sperare memento.

*Studio crescit sapientia.*

iscere ne cesses; curā sapientia crescit: † al. canticos  
ara datur longo prudentia temporis usū.

*Parce laudandum.*

arcē laudato: nam quem tu sēpe probāris,  
na dies, qualis fuerit, monstrabit, amicūs.

*Discere non pudeat.*

ne pudeat, quæ nesc̄ ēris, te velle doceri:  
cū realiquid laus est, + turpe est nil discere velle. † al. canticos

*Rebus utendum ad sobrietatem.*

cū Verere & Baccho lis est, sed juncta voluptas:  
nōd blandum est, animo complectere, sed fuge lites.

*Trifib⁹ & taciti, nō fidendum.*

emissos animo, ac tacitos vitare memento:  
nā flumen placidum est forsitan latet altius unda.

*Sors sorti conferenda.*

nam tibi displiceat rerum fortuna tuarum;  
terius specta + quo sis discrimine pejor. † al. qui sit.

*Ultra vires nihil aggrediendum.*

nōd potes id tenta: nam littus carpere remis  
utius est multo, quām + vēlistendere in altum. † al. velum.

*Cum iugo iniquū non contendendum.*

ontra hominem iustum prayē contendere noli;  
impēr enim Deus iustitas ulciscitur iras.

*Fortuna utraque aquē ferenda.*

neptis opibus noli tu flere querendo:  
d gaude potius, + tibi si contingat habere. † al. si nō.

*Ab amico quid ferendum.*

jaūra gravis, quæ sunt, amittere damnis:  
nt quædam, quæ terre decet patienter amicum.

*Tempori non confidendum.*

mpora longa tibi noli promittēre vitā;  
ocunque ingredēris sequitur mors, corpus ut umbra.

*Deus quibus placandus.*

Thure Deūm plāda: vitulum sine crescat aratro; † al. Tute,  
cēdas placare Deum, dum cēde litatur.

*A potentib⁹ lasus dissimula.*

de locum lēlius, fortunæ cede potenti⁹:  
cunquādere qui potuit, prodeſſe aliquando valebit.

*Castiga teipsum.*

in quid peccāris, castiga te ipse subinde:  
Intra dum sanas, dolor est medicina doloris.

## 18 JOAN. SULPITII Carmen.

*Amicus mutatus non vituperandus.*

Damnaris nunquam, post longum tempus, amicum:  
Mutavit mores; sed pignora prima memento.

*Beneficiis collatis attende.*

Gratior officiis, quo sis mage charior, esto:  
Ne nomen subeas quod dicitur + officiperda. + al. officiperda  
*Suspicionem tolle.*

Suspectus cave his, ne sis miser omnibus horis:  
Nam timidis & suspectis aptissima mors est.

*Humanitas erga servos.*

Cum fueris famulos proprios mercatus in usus,  
Ut servos dicas, homines tam esse memento.

*Occasionem rei sommoda ne pratermittas.*

Quamprimum rapienda tibi est occasio prima,  
Ne rursus quereras, quæ jam neglexeris ante.

*Non letandum repentino obitu.*

Morte repentinâ noli gaudere malorum:  
Felices obeunt, quorum sine crimine vita est.

*Pauper simulatum vitet amicum.*

Cum tibi sit conjux, + ne res & fama laboret,  
Vitandum ducas inimicum nomen amici.

*Junge studium.*

Cum tibi contigerit studio cognoscere multa;  
Fac discas multa, & vites + nil velle doceri.

*Brevitas memoria amica.*

Miraris verbis nudis me scribere versus?  
Hos brevitas sensus fecit conjugere binos.

---

## JOANNIS SULPITII Verulani, de Mō bus & Civilitate Puerorum, Carmen.

**Q**uos decet in vita mores servare docemus,  
Virtuti ut studeas, literulisque simul.  
Quæ te igitur moneo, miti, puer, indole serva;  
Præque tuis oculis hæc mea jussa tene.  
Omnibus in rebus studeas precor esse modestus:  
Sis avidus laudis, sit tibi cura boni.  
Sis pius ac sanctus, nec non venerare parentes:  
Et noceas nulli, surripiasque nihil.  
Futilis & mendax nunquam, nec credulus esto:  
Dedecus & metuas, & reverere bonos.  
Improba pestiferi fugias commercia cœtus,  
Sic & honorus eris, sic eris ipse bonus.

Nec maledicta refer, nec promas turpia dictu:  
Est stomachosa quidem dicere turpe tibi.  
Segnitiem fugito, quæ vitæ commoda pellit:  
Parce gulæ turpi, luxuriamque fuge.  
Parce & avaritiæ; bilem frenare memento,  
Atque animi fastus, invidiamque simul.  
idus sis audensque bonis: temerarius esse  
Despice: non audax sis, timidusve nimis.  
Esto verecundus: rectum te lectus habebit;  
Detege nec socium, nec tua membra, puer.  
Nec sis difficilis nimium nimiumque severus;  
Sed bonus & blandus conspicare, puer.  
Nec penitus mutum, nec te decet esse loquacem:  
Convenit ille toro, convenit iste foro.  
Hæc te servantem vita laus spesque futuræ;  
Spernentem turpis pœnaque morsque manent.  
Unc faciles aures, animum quoque trade serenum;  
Morigerare mihi, mollia iussa dabo.  
it fine labe toga, & facies sit lota manusque;  
Stiria nec naso pendeat ulla tuo.  
nihil emineat, sint & sine sordibus unguis;  
Sit coma, sit turpi calceus absque luto.  
inguaque non rigeat, careant rubigine dentes:  
Atque palam pudeat te fricuisse caput;  
xprimere & pulices, scabiemque urgere nocentem;  
Ne te sordidulum, qui videt ista, vocet.  
u spuis, aut mungis nares, nutasve, memento  
Post tua concussum vertere terga caput.  
ucorem haud tangas digitis, sputumve resorbas:  
Panniculo nasum mungere nempe decet.  
ructare cave, quin os in terga reflectas:  
Stringe os, & crepitum comprime quæso, puer.  
undiæque tibi placeant: medio quoque cultu  
Utere, ne turpis vel videare levis.  
on sum qui laudem summo te accumbere mane:  
Judice conveniens me dabit hora cibum.  
ec vos ante focum cœnas producite longas:  
Esse decet vivas, vivere non ut edas.  
ec sis vinosus, quamvis potasse Catonem  
Fama refert; fugias sumere vina mera.  
imque cibus nimius, potus quoque, maxima pœna;  
Corporis & vires ingeniique rapit.

20 JOAN. SULPITII Carmen.

Insternas mensam : nitidas imponito quadras,  
Atque salem & Cererem, flumina, vina, dapes.  
Deinde precare Deum, qui nobis cuncta benignè  
Suggerit, ut sanctos det tibi mane cibos.  
Atque, puer, jubeo, sedeas vel raro, sed astans  
Pocula porge celer, tolle, repone dapes.  
Juraque convivas super importare minister  
Estuge; nam turpis sæpe fit inde toga.  
Quodque jubebit herus, facilis semperque subito;  
Quemque tibi dederit, tu tibi sume locum.  
Et licet antiqui cubuissent pedore prono,  
Te colla hæc ætas recta tenere jubet.  
Et finito mensæ cubitis hædere potentes:  
Tu tantum faciles pone, repone manus.  
Quodque vir egregius pavido tibi porrigit, illud  
Sume lubens, grates aptaque verba refer.  
Esto tribus digitis, magnos nec sumito morsas:  
Nec duplices offas mandere utrinque juvet.  
Te vitare velim, cupidus ne ut lurco sonoras  
Contractæ fauces: mandere rite decet.  
Gausape non macules, aut pectus; nec tibi mentum  
Stillet; sitve tibi ne manus uncta, cave.  
Sæpe ora & digitos mappâ siccabis adeptâ,  
In quadra faciat nec tua palma moram.  
Quod tibi vicinum fuerit, tu sume: sodali  
Cede tuo, referat dum tamen ille manum.  
Dumque in frusta secat, caveas sumpsiſſe recisa:  
Lurco legit dulces absque rubore bolos.  
Non, manibus gremio immisſis, tibi velicet unguis  
Quod sumes: residens non agitato pedes.  
Incidasque prius quam dens contundat offellam:  
Tingantur rursum ne tibi morsa cave.  
Ne lingas digitos, nec rodas turpiter offa,  
Ast ea cultello radere rite potes.  
Sive super mensam cortex cumuletur, & ipsa  
Offa, vel in quadram, præ pedibus jace.  
Nec digitis tenta, nec pinguis delige frusta:  
Et quæcumque manus, hoc tibi lumen eat.  
Nec socium torvè inspicias, quidve ederit ille  
Advertas: gestus inspice sæpe tuos.  
Pocula cum sumes, tergit tibi mappa labella:  
Si tergas manibus, non mihi charus eris.

*JOAN. SULPITII Carmen.* 21

Una manus sumat pateram, ni hanc jaet in hostem

+ Theseus, aut Beli sint monumenta patris: *Vid. Ovid.*

Hanc binis quod si manibus captabis, id apte *Met. 12. v. 235.*

Efficies: digitis pocula sume tribus. *& Virg. Eo. 1.*

Ac teneas oculos, nec supra pocula fare: *v. 733.*

Plena aliquo vites sit tibi bucca cibo.

Deme merum cyatho, multum ne forte supersit,

Quod nolit socius sumere forte tuus.

Qui sapit, extinguet multo cum fonte falernum,

Et parc lympham diluet ille mero.

Haud facias binos haustus, nec fessus anheles,

Sibila nec labiis stridula prome tuis.

Nec citio sorbebis, velut ovi lutea grati:

Nec nimium tarda sume falerna mora.

Unum, sive duo, ad summum tria pocula sumes:

Si hunc numerum excedas, jam mihi potus eris.

Fac videoas quocunque bibes, modicumque pitissa :

Crater, sive calix, det tibi vina, brevis.

Os quoque tergebis semper post pocula; palmas

Ablue, quum mensam deseris, atque labra.

Denique jam grates pro donis redditio Christo,

Qui aeternas nobis preparat unus opes.

Inflectensque genu, jungens & brachia, PROSIT

Dicito: mox tolles ordine quemque suo.

---

REGIMENTUM MENSÆ honorabile.

*Nemo cibum capiat, donec Benedictio fiat.*

Vultus hilares habea.

Sal cultello capia-

Quod edendum sit, ne petas;

Non nisi depositum capia-

Rixas & murmura fugia-

Magibus erectis sedea-

Mappam mundam tenea-

Ne scalpatis cavea-

Aliis partem tribua-

Morsus non rejicia-

Modicum sed crebro biba-

Grates DEO per CHRISTUM refera-

*Privesur mensa, qui spreveris hac documenta.*

F I N I S.

## RUDIMENTA PIETATIS.

*In nomine Dei, Patris, Filii & Spiritus Sancti, Amen.*

### ORATIO DOMINICA, *Matth. vi.*

**P**ater noster, qui es in cœlis, 1. Sanctificetur Nomen tuum. 2. Veniat Regnum tuum. 3. Fiat voluntas tua, quemadmodum in cœlo, sic etiam in terra. 4. Panes nostrum quotidianum da nobis hodie. 5. Et remitte nobis debita nostra, sicut & nos remittimus debitoribus nostris. 6. Et ne nos inducas in temptationem, sed libera nos à malo. Quia tuum est regnum, & potentia, & gloria, in secula. *Amen.*

### SYMBOLUM APOSTOLICUM.

**C**redo in Deum Patrem omnipotentem, Creator cœli & terræ: 2. Et in Jesum Christum, Filium ejus unigenitum, Dominum nostrum, 3. Qui conceperat de Spiritu Sancto, natus ex Maria Virgine, 4. Passus sub Pontio Pilato, crucifixus, mortuus & sepultus, descendit ad inferna; 5. Tertio die resurrexit à mortuis. 6. Ascendit ad cœlos, sedet ad dextram Dei patris omnipotentis; 7. Inde venturus est iudicatum vivos & mortuos. 8. Credo in Spiritum Sanctum. 9. Credo in Ecclesiam catholicam, Sanctorum communionem; 10. missionem peccatorum; 11. Carnis resurrectionem, 12. vitam æternam. *Amen.*

### DECALOGUS, sive LEX DEI.

*Loquitur Deus omnia verba hæc. • Exod. xi.*

**E**go sum Dominus Deus tuus, qui eduxi te ex Aegypti domo servitutis;

I. Non habebis deos alienos in conspectu meo.

II. Nesculpas tibi simulacrum, nec ullam imaginem gas eorum, quæ aut supra sunt in cœlo, aut infra in terra, aut in aquis sub terra: neque incurves te illis, neque las ea. Ego enim sum Dominus Deus tuus, fortis, ze-

vindicans peccata patrum in filios, idque in tertia & quarta progenie eorum qui oderunt me, & misericordiam utens in millesimam eorum qui diligunt me, & observant precepta mea.

III. Ne usurpes nomen Domini Dei tui temerè. Neque enim Dominus dimittet eum impunitum, qui nomen ejus vanè usurpaverit.

IV. Memento diem Sabbati sanctifices. Sex diebus operaberis, & facies omne opus tuum. At Septimo die Sabbathum erit Domino Deo tuo. Non facies ullum opus, nec tu, nec filius tuus, nec filia tua, nec servus tuus, nec ancilla tua, nec jumentum tuum, nec advena qui est intra portas tuas. Nam sex diebus fecit Deus cœlum, terram, & mare, & quæcunque in iis sunt: requievit autem die septimo, indeoque benedixit diei Sabbati, & sanctificavit eum.

V. Honora patrem tuum & matrem tuam, ut diu vivas in terra, quam tibi Dominus Deus tuus datus est.

VI. Non occides.

VII. Non committes adulterium.

VIII. Non furaberis.

IX. Non dices contra proximum tuum falsum testimonium.

X. Non concupisces domum proximi tui, non concupisces uxorem proximi tui, nec servum ejus, nec ancillam, nec bovem, nec asinum, nec quicquam eorum quæ sunt proximi tui.

### SUMMA LEGIS, Matth. xxii. 34.

**P**harisei, quum audivissent quod JESUS silentium impo-  
suisset Sadducæis, congregati sunt pariter: 35. Et in-  
terrogavit eum unus ex iis qui erat legis peritus, tenans eum,  
36. Dicens. 36. Praeceptor noster, quod præceptum maximum  
est in lege?

37. JESUS autem dixit illi, Ut diligas Dominum Deum  
tuum, ex toto corde tuo, & ex tota anima tua, & ex omni  
cogitatione tua. 38. Hoc est præceptum maximum & pri-  
mum. 39. Secundum autem est simile illi: nempe, Ut di-  
ligas proximum tuum sicut te ipsum.

40. Ex his duobus præceptis pendent Lex & Prophetæ.  
Quot sunt Christiana Ecclesiæ Sacraenta?

Duo.

Quæ sunt illa?

Baptismus, & sacra Cœna Domini.

**INSTITUTIO BAPTISMI,**

*Cujus hæc sunt verba. Matth. xxviii. 19. Mar. xvi. 16.*

**T**e & docete omnes gentes, baptizantes eos, *in nomine Patris, & Filii, & Spiritus Sancti.* Qui crediderit, & baptizatus fuerit, servabitur: Qui non crediderit, condemnabitur. Et docete eos, ut custodiant quicquid mandavi vobis: & ecce ego vobis cum sum omnibus diebus, usque ad consummationem seculi.

*Hæc promissio repetitur, cum Scriptura Baptismum nominat Lavacrum regenerationis, & ablutionem peccatorum. Tit. iii. 5. Act. xxii. 16.*

**INSTITUTIO COENÆ DOMINI,**

*Cujus hæc sunt verba. 1 Cor. xi. 23.*

**E**go enim accepi à Domino nostro id quod tradidi vobis. Quod dominus noster Iesus Christus, eà nocte quâ prædictus est, accepit panem: &, gratiis a diis, fregit, ac dixit. *Accipite, manducate, hoc est corpus meum, quod pro vobis frangitur: Hoc facite ad memoriam mei.* Itidem & poculum postquam coenâisset, dicendo: *Hoc poculum est novum illud fædus per meum sanguinem: Hoc facite, quotiescumque bibentis, in mei recordationem.* Quotiescumque enim ederitis panem hunc, & poculum hoc biberitis, mortem Domini annunciabitis, usque quò venerit. Itaque quisquis ederit panem hunc, vel biberit poculum Domini indignè, reus est corporis & sanguinis Domini. Probet autem quisque se ipsum & ita de pane illo edat, & de poculo illo bibat. Nam qui edit & bibit indignè, damnationem sibi ipsi edit & bibit quia non discernit corpus Domini.

*Hæc promissio à Paulo exprimitur, cum inquit;*

**P**oculum gratiarum actionis, quo gratias agimus, nonnunquam communio est sanguinis Christi? Panis quem frangimus, nonne communio est corporis Christi? Quoniam unus panis, unum corpus, multi sumus. Nam omnes unius panis participes sumus.

# Summula CATECHISMI.

## Triplex Hominis Status.

1. { In sanctitate & sanitate.
2. { Sub peccato & morte.
3. { Sub Christi gratia.

### QUÆSTIO.

**Q.** Uis hominem creavit?

**R.** Responso. DEUS.

**Q.** Qualem creavit eum?

**R.** Sanctum & sanum, mundique dominum,

**Q.** In quem usum creatus est?

**R.** Ut Deo inserviret.

**Q.** Quod servitii genus ab eo exigebat Deus?

**R.** Legis suæ præstationem.

**Q.** Num in legis Dei præstatione persistit?

**R.** Nequaquam: sed eam sœdè transgressus est.

**Q.** Quæ hujus transgressionis pena i?

**R.** Mors æterna, cùm animæ, tum corporis, & ipsi & posteris.

**Q.** Quomodo inde liberamur?

**R.** Merè Dei gratiâ in Christo Jesu, absque nostris meritis.

**Q.** Cujusmodi persona est Christus?

**R.** Verè Deus, verèque homo, in persona una.

**Q.** Quomodo nos liberavit?

**R.** Morte suâ: mortem enim nobis debitam pro nobis subiit, nosque eripuit.

**Q.** Num omnes liberantur per Christum?

**R.** Minimè, sed ii tantum qui fide eum amplectuntur.

**Q.** Quid est fides?

**R.** Cum mihi persuadeo, Deum me omnesque Sanctos amare, nobisque Christum cum omnibus suis bonis gratis donare.

**Q.** Recense summam tuæ fideli?

**R.** Credo in Deum Patrem, Sc.

**Q.** Quis operatur hanc fidem in nobis?

**R.** Spiritus Sanctus per Verbum & Sacra menta.

**Q.** Quomodo eam operatur per Verbum & Sacra menta?

**R.** Aperit cor, ut Deo loquenti in Verbo & Sacramentis credamus.

**Q.** Quid est Dei verbum?

**R.** Quicquid veteris ac novi Testamenti libris continetur.

**Q.** Verbi Dei quot partes?

**R.** Duæ, Lex & Evangelium.

**Q.** Quid est lex?

**R.** Doctrina Dei, debitum à nobis exigens, & quia non

su-

## 26 SUMMULA CATECHISMI.

sumus solvendo, damnans.

Q. Quid Evangelium?

R. Doctrina Christum cum omnibus suis bonis nobis offerens, debitumque nostrum ab eo solutum, nosque liberos esse proclamans.

Q. Quid Sacraenta?

R. Sigilla Dei, significatio & donantia nobis Christum cum omnibus suis bonis.

Q. Quae hac Christi bona?

R. Amor Dei, Spiritus Sanctus, unio nostri cum Christo: unde remissio peccatorum, sanatio naturæ, spiritualis nutritio. & vita æterna promanant.

Q. Quot sunt Novi Testamenti Sacraenta?

R. Duo, Baptismus & sacramenta Cœna.

Q. Quid est Baptismus?

R. Sacramentum initiationis nostræ in Christum, & ablutionis à peccatis.

Q. Quid initio nostri in Christum?

R. Unio nostri cum Christo; unde manat remissio peccatorum & perpetua resipiscencia.

Q. Baptismus quid juvat fidem?

R. Testatur, ut aqua corpus abluitur, sic operante Spiritu Sancto, à peccatorum reatu & radice, per fidem in sanguine Christi, nos repurgari.

Q. Quid est sacra Cœna?

R. Sacramentum spiritualis amem.

nutritionis nostræ in Christo.

Q. Cœna Domini quid juvat fidem?

R. Testatur, ut pane & vino corpora nostra aluntur & augescunt; sic animas nostras corpore & sanguine Christi crucifixi ali & corroborari ad vitam æternam.

Q. Corpore & sanguine Christi quomodo alimur?

R. Dum fide percipimus, & Spiritus Sancti, qui una adest, vi, ea nobis applicamus.

Q. Quando fide percipimus, & nobis applicamus corpus Christi crucifixi?

R. Dum nobis persuadimus Christi mortem & crucifixionem non minus ad nos pertinere, quam si ipsi nos pro peccatis nostris crucifixi essemus: Persuasio autem hæc est vera fidei.

Q. Vera fides quomodo digneatur?

R. Per bona opera.

Q. Quomodo cognoscuntur bona opera?

R. Si Dei legi respondeant.

Q. Recita Dei legem?

R. Audi Israel, Ego sum Dominus, Sc.

Q. Hæc lex de quibus te admonet?

R. De officio meo erga Deum, & erga proximum.

Q. Quid officii debes Deo?

R. Supra omnes eum ut amem.

Q. Quid

Q. Quid debes proximo?

R. Eum ut amem tanquam me ipsum.

Q. Potis es hoc præstare?

R. Minime gentium: nam tantisper dum hic vivimus, habitat in nobis peccatum.

Q. In Dei filiis quid hinc exigit?

R. Perennis pugna inter carnem & spiritum.

Q. In hac pugna quomodo nobis versandum?

R. Affiduè orandum, ut Deus peccata nobis remittat, imbecillitatemque suffentet.

Q. Quomodo orandum?

R. Ut nos docuit Christus, Pater noster, qui es, &c.

Q. Quod tibi persuades, Deum donaturum quæ petis?

R. Quia orare iussit, pollicitusque est, quicquid petarem in Christi nomine, se mihi largiturum.

Q. Quid debes Deo pro tot beneficiis?

R. Ut ei gratias agam, perpetuòque serviam.

Q. Quomodo Deo servendum?

R. Ex verbi ipsius præscripto, ut jam dictum est.

*Præcipua Capita Christianæ Religionis, desumpta è Sacra Scriptura Veteris ac Novi Testamenti.*

I. *De DEO.*

*Joan. iv. 24.* **D**EUS est Spiritus. . . . . *Apoc. iv. 8.* Sanctus, Sanctus, Sanctus, Dominus Deus omnipotens, qui fuit, qui est, & qui venturus est.

*Psal. cxlvii. 5.* Dominus noster est magnus, multarumque virium, & sapientia ejus est immensa.

*Exod. xxxiv. 6.* . . . . . Jehova, Jehova Deus, misericors & exorabilis, longanimus, & abundans benignitate & fide.

*Vers. 7.* Custodiens misericordiam milibus, condonans iniuriam, transgressionem & peccatum, & qui nullo pacto absolvet nocentes.

*Deut. vi. 4.* Jehova Deus noster est unus Jehova.

*Joan. v. 7.* Tres sunt qui testantur in celo, Pater, Sermo & Spiritus Sanctus & hi tres sunt unum.

II. *De Creatione, lapsu, peccato & miseria Hominis.*

*Gen. i. 26.* **E**T Deus dixit, Faciamus hominem ad imaginem nostram, secundum similitudinem nostram.

*Vers. 27.* Itaque Deus creavit hominem ad imaginem suam, ad imaginem Dei creavit eum . . . .

*Ecccl. vii. 29.* Deus fecit hominem rectum, . . . .

*Rom. v. 12.* Peccatum intravit in mundum per unum hominem, & mors per peccatum: & ita mors pervasit ad omnes homines, quatenus omnes peccarunt.

*Rom. iii. 23.* Omnes peccaverunt, ac deficiuntur gloria Dei.

*Psal.*

*Psal. li. 5.* Ex formatus sum in iniuitate, & in peccato mater mea comcepit me.

### III. De redēptione generis humāni per Iesum Christum.

*Joan. iii. 16.* **D**EUS sic amavit mundum, ut dederit filium suum unigenitum, ut quisquis credit in eum, non pereat, sed habeat vitam æternam.

*1 Jo. iv. 9.* Amor Dei patuit erga nos in hoc, quod Deus misit filium suum unigenitum in mundum, ut vivamus per eum.

*V. 10.* In hoc est amor, non quod nos dilexerimus Deum, sed quod ipse dilexit nos, & miserit filium suum, ut effet piaculum pro peccatis nostris.

*1 Pet. iii. 18.* Christus quoque passus est semel pro peccatis, justus pro iustis, ut adduceret nos ad Deum.

*1 Pet. ii. 24.* Qui ipsemet sustulit peccata nostra in suo corpore super lignum, ut nos mortui peccatis, vigeremus justitiae, & cuius vibicibus sanati sumus.

*Tit. ii. 14.* Qui dedit scipsum pro nobis, ut redimeret nos ab omni iniuitate, & purificaret sibi ipsi populum peculiarem, accensum studio bonorum operum.

### IV. De iis quæ Deus à nobis exigit, ut salutem per Christum consequamur.

*Aet. XVI. 30.* **D**Ixit, Domini, quid faciendum est mihi, ut sim salvus?

*Ver. 31.* Et illi dixerunt, Crede in Dominum Iesum, & salvus eris.

*Aet. iii. 19.* Kespiscite, & convergitimini, ut peccata vestra delectantur, cum tempora recreationis venient à conspectu Domini.

*Ils. iv. 6.* Querite Jehovam dum possit inveniri, & invocate eum dum est propinquus.

*Ver. 7.* Improbus derelinquit viam suam, & vir iniquus cogitationes suas; revertaturque ad Jehovam, & miserebitur illius, & ad Deum nostrum, quia plurimum condonabit.

*Luc. ix. 23.* Si quis vult venire post me, ipse abneget se, tollatque suam crucem quotidie, & sequatur me.

*Matth. xi. 28.* Venite ad me omnes qui laboratis & onerati estis, & ego recreabo vos.

*Ver. 29.* Attollite jugum meum in vos, & discite à me, quia mitis sum & misericordes; & invenietis requiem apud meis vestris.

*Ver. 30.* Jugum enim meum est facile, & onus meum est leve.

*Heb. v. 9.* Perfectus factus est auctor salutis æternae omnibus obedientibus

*Io. xiv. 15.* Si amatis me, servate præcepta mea.

*Io. x. 24.* Vos estis amici mei, si feceritis quæcumque ego præcipio vobis.

*Tit. ii. 11.* Gratia Dei, quæ salutem adserit, apparuit omnibus hominibus;

*Ver. 12.* Erudiens nos, ut, abnegata impietate & mundanis cupiditatibus, vivamus sobrie, justè & pie in hoc præsenti seculo.

*Mic. vi. 8.* Indicavit tibi, O homo, quid sit bonum: & quid exigit Jehova à te, nisi ut requum facias, & ames misericordiam, & ambules submissus tibi Deo tuo?

*Col. iii. 5.* Mortificate igitur vestra membra terrestria; scortationem, impunitatem, libidinem, cupiditatem malam, & avaritiam, quæ est idolatria:

*Ver. 6.* Propter quæ, ira Dei venit super filios contumaces.

*Ver. 8.* . . . Déponite hæc omnia, iram, exaudientiam, malitiam, maladictiam, obscenitatem verborum ex ore vestro.

*Ver. 9.* Ne mentimini alii aliis.

*Ver. 12.*